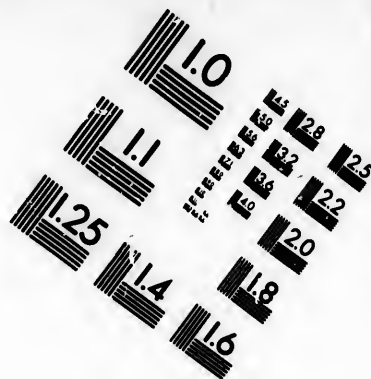
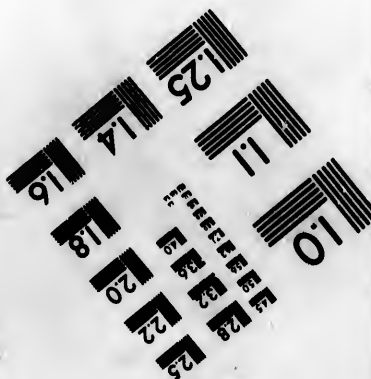
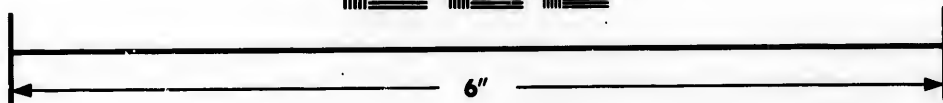




Resolution test chart showing patterns of vertical and horizontal lines with numerical values ranging from 1.0 to 2.5.



Photographic Sciences Corporation

**23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503**

**CIHM/ICMH
Microfiche
Series.**

**CIHM/ICMH
Collection de
microfiches.**



Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques

© 1983

Technical and Bibliographic Notes/Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.

- ☐ Coloured covers/
Couverture de couleur
- ☐ Covers damaged/
Couverture endommagée
- ☐ Covers restored and/or laminated/
Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée
- ☐ Cover title missing/
Le titre de couverture manque
- ☐ Coloured maps/
Cartes géographiques en couleur
- ☐ Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/
Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)
- ☐ Coloured plates and/or illustrations/
Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur
- ☐ Bound with other material/
Relié avec d'autres documents
- ☒ Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion
along interior margin/
La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la
distortion le long de la marge intérieure
- ☐ Blank leaves added during restoration may
appear within the text. Whenever possible, these
have been omitted from filming/
Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées
lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte,
mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont
pas été filmées.
- ☐ Additional comments:/
Commentaires supplémentaires:

L'Institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.

- ☐ Coloured pages/
Pages de couleur
- ☐ Pages damaged/
Pages endommagées
- ☐ Pages restored and/or laminated/
Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées
- ☒ Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/
Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées
- ☐ Pages detached/
Pages détachées
- ☒ Showthrough/
Transparence
- ☐ Quality of print varies/
Qualité inégale de l'impression
- ☐ Includes supplementary material/
Comprend du matériel supplémentaire
- ☐ Only edition available/
Seule édition disponible
- ☐ Pages wholly or partially obscured by errata
slips, tissues, etc., have been refilmed to
ensure the best possible image/
Les pages totalement ou partiellement
obscurcies par un feuillet d'errata, une pelure,
etc., ont été filmées à nouveau de façon à
obtenir la meilleure image possible.

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

10X	12X	14X	16X	18X	20X	22X	24X	26X	28X	30X	32X
				✓							

The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

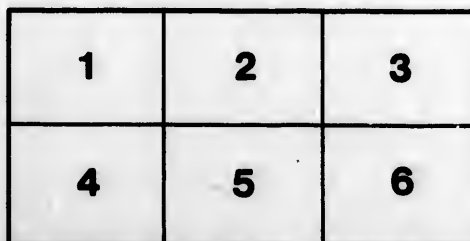
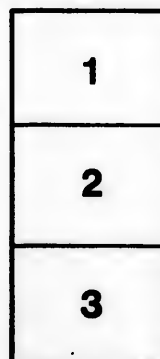
Library
Agriculture Canada

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol ➡ (meaning "CONTINUED"), or the symbol ▼ (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:



L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

Bibliothèque
Agriculture Canada

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

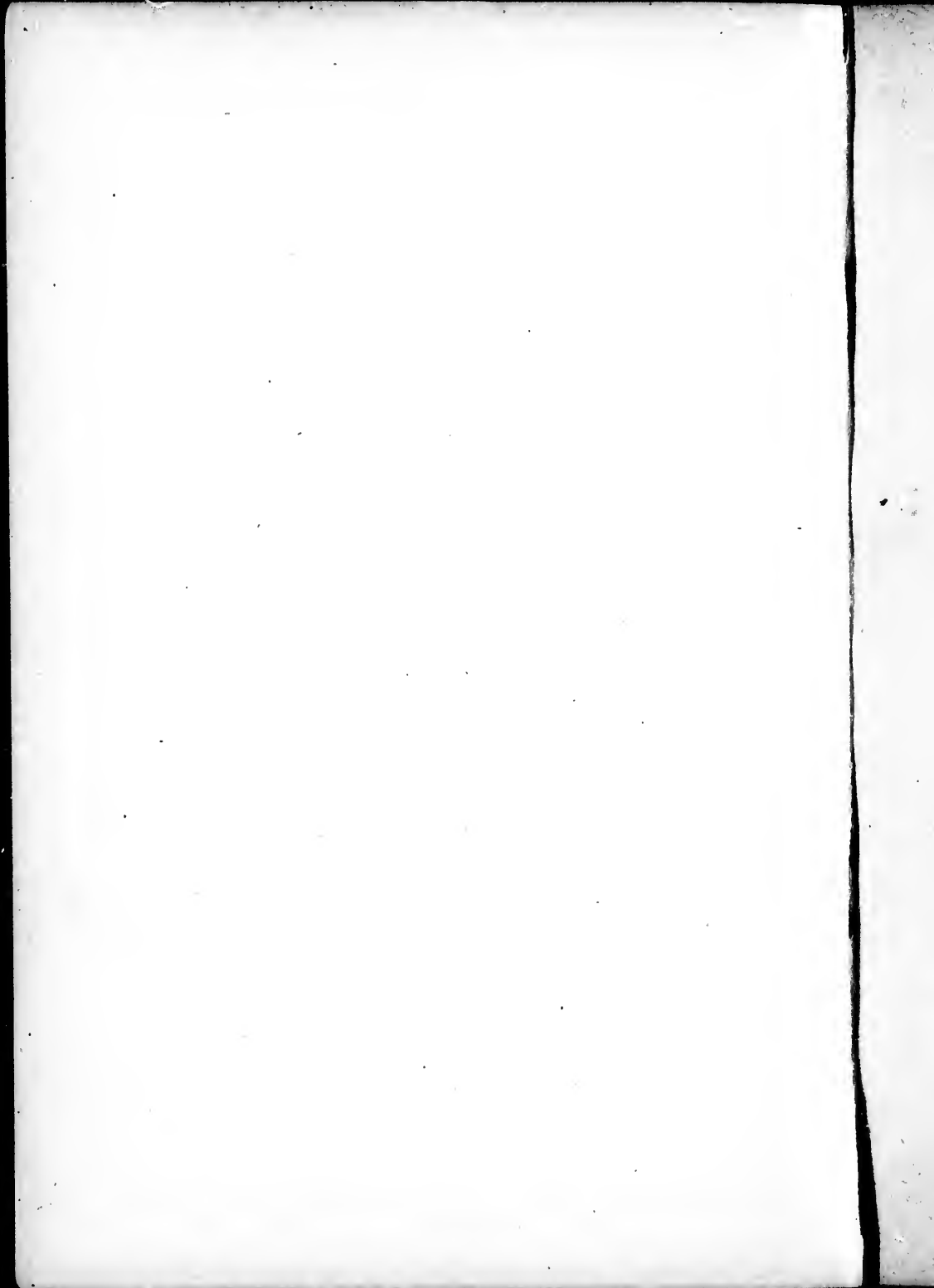
Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole ➡ signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole ▼ signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.

tails
du
odifier
une
image

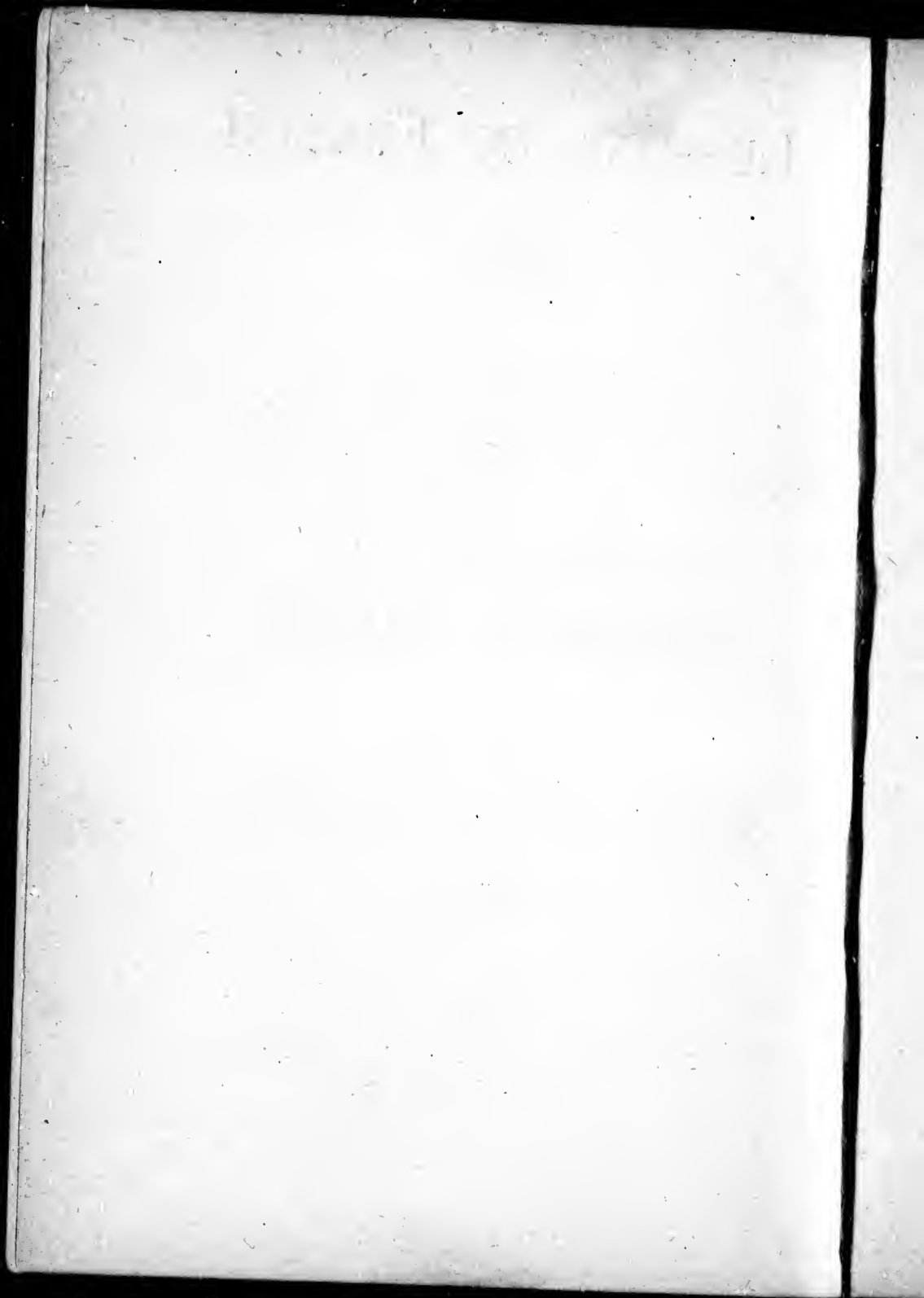
rrata
to

palure,
n à



LESSONS IN FRENCH.

PART II.



LESSONS IN FRENCH.

PART II.

A THEORETICAL FRENCH GRAMMAR
WITH ADVANCED EXERCISES AND COMPOSITIONS.

BY

F. H. SYKES, M.A.

*Master in English, French, and German in the Parkdale
Collegiate Institute, Toronto.*

Text-Book in French Grammar and Composition
Authorized by the Department of Education of Ontario.

TORONTO :
THE COPP, CLARK COMPANY, LIMITED.
9 FRONT STREET WEST.

1890.

Entered according to Act of the Parliament of Canada, in the year one thousand eight hundred and ninety, by THE COPP, CLARK COMPANY (LIMITED), Toronto, Ontario, in the Office of the Minister of Agriculture.

P R E F A C E.

The character of the Second Part of the *Lessons in French* has been determined by the character of the First Part, as well as by the requirements of students of French in the advanced classes of High Schools. The admirable practice in the elements of French afforded by the exercises of Fasquelle renders possible more thorough and more advanced work than the First Part itself supplies ; while the attention paid to the study of French in our secondary schools—an attention due not only to the force and beauty of the language, but also to its position as one of the languages of our country—renders this advanced and thorough work desirable. Under these circumstances the present Second Part is offered in the hope that it may be of some service in promoting the study of French.

It is intended by the Second Part to supply whatever was omitted from the First Part on account of the more elementary character of that work ; to furnish a systematic theoretical grammar for reference ; and to carry forward with increased difficulty the practical study of French, especially in the direction of the writing of continuous prose.

Certain new theories, aiming at a rational study of certain parts of French grammar, will be found embodied in the work, which, however, in the main does not deviate from the system of theoretical grammar at present in vogue. In the extracts for translation the author has made with an unwilling hand occasional verbal changes, for the purpose of rendering the selections more suitable themes to the theory to which they are appended. In one or two instances in the exercises, likewise, some sacrifice has been made of English idiom for the sake of avoiding difficulties in advance of the lessons in which they occur.

The grammarians to whom the author is indebted in the writing of the Second Part are many. Something is due to the works of Eugène-

Fasnacht, Baume, Bué, Brachet, De Fivas, Roulier, Kittell, and Whitney. But he is under the greatest obligations as to theory and exercises, to the *Grammaires françaises* of Larousse, Larive et Floury ; to that splendid tribute to the French language,—the *Französische Grammatik* of Edouard Mätzner ; and to the dictionaries of Littré and the French Academy.

The author takes the opportunity here afforded to thank for most kind help in the reading of proofs, Prof. Dr. Archibald MacMechan of Dalhousie Collège, Halifax ; Rev. T. Z. Lefebvre, B.C.L., of Quebec ; and E. J. McIntyre, Esq., B.A., of the Collegiate Institute, St. Catharines.

*Parkdale Collegiate Institute,
Toronto.*

tell, and
theory and
t Floury ;
the Gram-
and the

for most
Mechan of
obec ; and
tharines.

GRAMMATICAL INDEX.

[The numbers in the paragraphs refer to sub-section numbers.]

	PAGE.
PELIMINARY SECTION	1-2
Contraction, 1. Elision, 2. Use of Capitals, 3. Derivation and Analogy of Words in English and French, 4-5.	
THE NOUN	2-23
Gender, 6-22.—To Determine the Gender—by Meaning, 6-7, by Form, 8. Nouns differing in Meaning as they differ in Gender, 9. Formation of the Feminine, 12-22. Number, 23-38.—Plural of Common Nouns, 23-28 ; of Compound Nouns, 28-35 ; of Proper Nouns, 36 ; Nouns used only in the Plural, 37-38. Uses of the Noun and of the Article, 39-57.—The Particular Noun, 42-46 ; the General Noun, 47-48 ; the Partitive Noun, 49-53 ; the Indefinite Noun, 54-56 ; the Indeterminate Noun, 57.	
THE ADJECTIVE	27-50
Formation of the Feminine, 58-60. Of the Plural, 61-62 ; of Compound Adjectives, 63. Agreement, 64-72. Place, 73-81. Comparison, 82-86. Complements, 87-91. Adjectives used adverbially, 92. Numeral Adjectives, 93-94 ; Fractional, Multiplicative, Collective Numerals, 95. Indefinite Adjectives, 96-109. Possessive Adjectives and Possessive Pronouns Contrasted, etc., 110-113. Limitations in the Use of Possessive Adjectives, 114-115. Demonstrative Adjectives and Demonstrative Pronouns Contrasted, etc., 116-120. Interrogative Adjectives, 121-122.	
THE PRONOUN	50-62
Possessive, 110-111. Demonstrative, 116-120. Interrogative, 123-125. Indefinite, 126-137. Relative, 133-147. Personal, 148-154 ; Place of Personal Pronouns, 155-159 ; Repetition, 160-161.	
THE VERB	64-123
General Remarks—on Conjugations, 162-164 ; on Root and Terminations, 165-167 ; on Formation of Tenses, 168. Paradigms: Auxiliaries and the Regular Conjugations, 169-174. Peculiarities to the First Conjugation, 175. Interrogative Verbs, 176-177. Negative Verbs, 178-180. Passive Verbs, 181-185. Reflective Verbs, 186-187. Auxiliaries of Intransitive Verbs, 188-190. Impersonal Verbs, 191-192. The Irregular Verbs ; Suggestions for a new grouping of Verbs, 193-198 ; Irregular Conjugations, 199 ; Index of the Irregular Verbs, 200. Agreement, 201-204. Place of Verb and Subject Noun, 205-206. Complements of Verbs, 207-212. Place of Complements, 213-214. Tenses of the Indicative, including the so-called Conditional, 215-226. The Imperative, 227. Indicative and Subjunctive Contrasted, etc., 227-236. Tenses of the Subjunctive, 237-239. The Infinitive, 240-249. The Participle—	

Verbal Adjective, 250; Gerund, 251; Present Participle, 252-253; the Past Participle, 254-258.

THE ADVERB 125-129

Adverbs of Time, 259; of Place, 260; of Quantity, 261; of Affirmation, 262; of Negation, 263-266; of Order, 267; of Repetition, 268; of Manner and the Formation of Adverbs of Manner, 269-270. Comparison of Adverb, 271-272. Nouns as Adverbs, 273. Place of the Adverb, 274.

THE PREPOSITION..... 131-134

The Principal Prepositions and their Uses, 275-301. Repetition of the Prepositions, 302.

THE CONJUNCTION 135

Conjunctions with the Indicative or Subjunctive, 234; with the Indicative, 235, *a*; with the Subjunctive, 235, *b*. The Conjunction of Substitution, 236. Use of *et* and *and*, 304.

THE INTERJECTION..... 135

The Common Interjections, 305. Other Parts of Speech as Interjections, 306.

ABBREVIATIONS, BRACKETS.

The customary grammatical abbreviations have been employed: *masc.* or *m.* for *masculine*; *fem.* or *f.* for *feminine*; *sing.* for *singular*; *pl.* for *plural*; *indic.* for *indicative*; *subj.* for *subjunctive*; *pres.* for *present*; *part.* for *participle*; *P.P.* for *past participle*, etc.

In the exercises words in italics are to be omitted; words in parentheses (),—if English, give a construction similar to the French construction,—if French, supply the word used to translate the preceding English word; words in square brackets [], though unnecessary to the English sentence, are essential to the French; the hyphens between words not actually requiring them denote that the French equivalents will be single words.

LESSONS IN FRENCH.

PART II.

I.—PRELIMINARY SECTION.

I. CONTRACTION (CONTRACTION).

1. **De ; À.** The forms **le** and **les** of the Article after **de** become **du, des ;** after **à, au, aux.**

So also with **lequel, etc. : Les livres auxquels je pense.** Not so, however, in the pronoun **le, les : J'aime à le (les) voir.**

An old contraction of **en** and **les** is still to be noticed in a few expressions: **maître ès arts ; bachelier ès lettres, etc.**

II. ELISION (ELISION).

2. The elision of the vowel before another vowel or **h*** mute takes place with the following words:

1. The article **le, la ; l'oiseau ; l'épée ; l'homme.**
2. The pronouns **le, la, je, te, me, se, ce** before verbs or the pronouns **en** and **y.**
3. The relative **que** and the conjunction **que ;** also **de** and **ne : Je veux qu'il fasse ce qu'il dit. Il n'a pas d'argent.**
4. **Jusque : Il vient jusqu'ici.** But **jusque** sometimes adds **s** to avoid elision: **jusques à quand.**
5. **Lorsque, puisque, quoique ;** but only before **il, elle, on, ils, elles, un, une : Lorsqu'un homme vient ; quoiqu'il soit grand.**
6. **Entre ;** but only in compound nouns and verbs: **entr'acte ; entr'ouvrir.**
7. **Presque,** but only in **presqu'île ; quelque,** but only before **un(e) : quelqu'un.**
8. **Grand'** occurs in many familiar words: **grand'mère, grand'chose, grand'faim.**
9. **Si ;** but only before **il** and **ils : s'il veut, s'ils veulent.**

NOTE—Elision does not take place before **onze, onzième, oui, ouate, uhlan, yacht.**

***H** is aspirate in the following words and their derivatives: **hache, haie, haillon, haine, hair, hâle, haletant, halle, hallebarde, halte, hamac, hameau, hanche, hangar, hannelon, hanter, harangue, haras, harceler, hardes, hardi, harem, hareng, haricot, harnais, harpe, harpie, hasard, hâte, hauban, haubert, hautain, haut, havre, havresac, hennir, Henri, heraut, héron, héros (derivatives mute), hêtre, heurter, hibou, hideux, hiérarchie, hisser, hocher, hochet, Hollande, homard, Hongrie, honte, horde, hors-d'œuvre, Hottentot, houban, houille, huée, hussard, hurler, etc.**

III. USE OF THE CAPITAL LETTER (EMPLOI DE LA LETTRE MAJUSCULE).

3. The differences between the English and French use of the capitals are mainly as follows:

1. The adjective is not written with a capital unless forming a compound with a word that requires the capital:

L'Être suprême, un livre français ; but: **le Saint-Esprit, les États-Unis.**

NOTE—The adjective forming with a common noun a proper name takes the capital: la mer Rouge, la forêt Noire.

2. Common nouns in French used as titles are not written with capitals: le roi David, la mer Pacifique, le maréchal Grammont.

3. The names of months, days of the week; the points of the compass, unless forming part of a title, are written without capitals: janvier, février; lundi, mardi; le nord, le sud. (But: l'Amérique du Nord, l'Amérique du Sud.)

4. Names of religions are written with small letters: le christianisme, le mahométisme.

5. Monsieur, madame, etc., unless abbreviated, are usually without a capital: je vous prie, messieurs, etc. But: MM. de Saint-Aignan et Dangeau.

IV. DERIVATION AND ANALOGY OF WORDS IN ENGLISH AND FRENCH.

4. English words derived from French have changed but little if the French primitives ended in:

-able: capable, aimable.	-el: cruel; or -al: paternal.	-ine: médecine, famine.
-acle: miracle, spectacle.	-ent: présent, prudent.	-in into -ine: masculin.
-ade: parade, promenade.	-ence: présence, prudence.	-ion: attention, religion.
-age: rage, image, âge.	-eur into -(u)r: labeur.	-ique into -ic: mathématique.
-aire into -ary: ordinaire.	-eux into -ous: généreux.	-ir into -ish: finir, vernir.
-al: canal, général.	-ible: possible, sensible.	-if into -ive: natif, actif.
-ance into -ancy: constance.	-ice: notice, avarice.	-isme into -ism: enthousiasme.
-ant: constant, instant.	-ide into -id: livide.	-iste into -ist: artiste.
-é(e) into -y: liberté, armée.	-ie into -y: mélodie, furie.	-ure: culture, nature.
-ège: collège, cortège.	-ien into -ian: chrétien.	-user into -use: abuser, etc.

NOTE. The *h*, *v* often indicate the older French *s* preserved in some English derivatives. Maître, master; répondre, respond; pâte, paste; déployer, display, etc.

5. The proper names in -a in English usually end in -e in French; classical names in -o and -es in English, in -on and -e in French.

California,	Californie.	Cicero,	Cicéron.
Africa,	Afrique.	Plato,	Platon.
Louisa,	Louise.	Socrates,	Socrate.
But Prussia,	Prusse.	Diogenes,	Diogène.

II. THE NOUN (DU NOM).

I. GENDER (DU GENRE).

I. TO DETERMINE THE GENDER.

6. The gender of nouns may be determined from (1) the Meaning, (2) the Form.

The student of Latin has a third means—from the gender of the original word in Latin. French nouns have almost always preserved the gender of Latin nouns from which they are derived. Masc. and neut. nouns in Latin are masc. in French; (except abstract nouns in -or which are usually fem. in French); fem. in Lat. are fem. in French.

1. GENDER ACCORDING TO MEANING.

7. Of masculine gender are names of:

1. Males: oncle, tigre, chien, etc.

EXCEPTIONS—bête, fool, dupe, pratique, customer, sentinelle, sentinel, victime.

2. Seasons, Months, Days of the Week: été, janvier, mercredi, etc.

3. Points of the Compass, Metals, Mountains, Winds: est, east, fer, le Jura, aquilon, north wind, etc.

EXCEPTIONS—bise, north wind (poet.), brise, breeze, moussons, trade-winds.

4. Measures in the French decimal system: gramme, mètre, centime, kilogramme, etc.

5. Trees, Shrubs: chêne, oak, pommier, apple-tree; groseillier, currant-bush, etc.

EXCEPTIONS—épine, thorn; aubépine, hawthorn; vigne, vine.

6. Countries, Flowers, Fruits, Rivers, Towns, not ending in e mute: Canada, Danemarck; œillet, pink, pavot, poppy; melon, raisin, grape; St. Laurent, Niagara; Londres, Paris, etc.

7. Other Parts of Speech used as Nouns are masculines:

(1) Adjectives: (a) as abstract nouns: le beau, le sublime.

(b) As names of colors: le vert, green, le jaune, yellow. (c) As names of languages: le français, le chinois.

(2) Infinitives: le boire et le manger, drinking and eating.

(3) Letters of the alphabet, etc.: un a, un si, un pourquoi.

Of feminine gender are names of:

a. Females: tante, tigresse, chienne, etc.

b. Festivals: la (fête de) St. Jean, Midsummer's Day; la Saint-Pierre.

EXCEPTIONS—Noël, Christmas; though one may say, as above, la (fête de) Noël.

c. Some Ranges of Mountains: les Alpes, les Pyrénées, les montagnes Rocheuses, etc.

d. Virtues and Vices: vertu, charité, intempérance, etc.

EXCEPTIONS—courage, mérite, mensonge, lying; orgueil, pride, vice.

e. Countries, Flowers, Fruits, Rivers, Towns, ending in e mute: Angleterre, Russie; pensée, pansy, marguerite, daisy; figue, datte; Tamise, Thames; Rome.

EXCEPTIONS—le Mexique, le Hanovre, le Bengale, le Danube, le Rhône, le Tibre, le Tage; chèvre-feuille, honeysuckle.

the capital:

capitals: le roi

, unless form-
di, mardi; le

isme, le ma-

a capital: je

D FRENCH.

French primi-

ne, famine.

masculin.

n, religion.

mathématique.

finir, vernir.

matif, actif.

enthousiasme.

artiste.

nature.

: abuser, etc.

English deriva-

splay, etc.

classical names

n.

s.

e.

Meaning,

final word in

nouns from

ch; (except

a. in French.

2. GENDER ACCORDING TO FORM.

8. Nouns masculine are :

1. Those ending in a consonant. Except the following

masculines :

bastion ; tison, *fire-brand* ; poison ; poisson, *fish* ; soupçon, *suspicion*.

masculines :

bonheur, *good-fortune* ; malheur, *bad-fortune* ; honneur, *honor* ; déshonneur, *dishonor*.

2. Those ending in any vowel except e mute. Except the

masculines :

aparté, *words aside* ; arrêté, *resolution* ; comité, *committee* ; comté, *county* ; côté, *side* ; pâté, *pie* ; traité, *treatise* ; thé, *tea*.

Many nouns (3000) in e mute are masculine :

3. Masculine endings in e mute are : -age, -asme, -isme, -cle, -ème, -ège, -ôme. Except the

Nouns feminine are :

feminines :

clef, *key* ; nef, *ship* ; soif, *thirst* ; falm, *hunger* ; fin, *end* ; main, *hand* ; chanson, *song* ; façon, *manner* ; leçon, *lesson* ; rançon, *ransom* ; brebis, *sheep* ; fois, *time* ; vis, *screw* ; oasis ; dent, *tooth* ; dot, *dowry* ; forêt, *rest* ; gent, *people* ; mort, *death* ; part, *share* ; paix, *peace* ; chaux, *lime* ; faux, *scythe* ; perdrix, *partridge* ; croix, *cross* ; noix, *nut* ; poix, *pitch* ; voix, *voice* ; toux, *cough*.

- a. Those ending in -cion, -gion, -nion, -sion, -tion, -xion, -son, -çon. Except the following

- b. Abstract nouns ending in -eur, and the words : fleur, *flower* ; liqueur, *liquor* ; lueur, *gleam* ; rumeur, *rumor* ; sueur, *sweat* ; tumeur, *tumor* ; vapeur, *vapor*. Except the following

feminines :

après-midi, *afternoon* ; bru, *daughter-in-law* ; eau, *water* ; foi, *faith* ; fourmi, *ant* ; loi, *law* ; peau, *skin* ; tribu, *tribe* ; vertu, *virtue*.

- c. Those ending in -té, -tié. Except the following

Most nouns (7000) in e mute are feminine :

feminines :

page, *rage*, image, *plage*, *coast* ; nage, *swimming* ; débâcle, *breaking up of the ice* ; crème, *cream*.

are :

thirst; faim,
hand; chan-
r; leçon, les-
is, sheep; fols,
dent, tooth;
gent, people;
paix, peace;
perdrix, par-
x, nut; pois,
ough.

on, -gion,
on, -xion,
the follow-

s ending
ords: fleur,
or; lueur,
or; sueur,
r; vapeur,
following

ru, daughter-
auk; fourmi,
tribu, tribe;

-tié.

ing

00) in e
ne :

coast; nage,
king up of the

masculines :

silence, espace, space; grade.

masculines :

intervalle, interval; chèvrefeuille,
honeysuckle; libelle, libel; vermicelle,
vermicello; vaudeville; lierre, ivy; par-
terre, flower-garden; tonnerre, thun-
der; verre, glass; carosse, carriage
amulette, amulet; squelette, skeleton;
and nouns ending in -urre.

masculines :

camée, cameo; colisée, coliseum; lycée,
college; mausolée, mausoleum; musée,
museum; génie, genius; incendie,
conflagration.

4. Compounds of which a verb forms part. Except the

d. Feminine endings in e mute
are: -ace, -ade, -anc(s)e,
-enc(s)e, -ière, -ine, -ique,
-ure, etc. Except the following

e. e mute preceded by a
doubled consonant (nn, ll,
pp, rr, ss, tt) Except the

f. e mute preceded by an-
other vowel. Except the

femines :

garde-robe, wardrobe; perce-neige,
snow-drop.

II. NOUNS THAT DIFFER IN MEANING AS THEY DIFFER IN GENDER.

9. Masc.		Fem.	Masc.		Fem.
help (m.),	aide,	help, helper (f.).	cabin-boy	mousse,	moss.
eagle (m.),	aigle,	{ standard, eagle (f.).	great com- position;		
quelque chose = something,	chose,	{ As noun = thing.	le grand œuvre (in alchemy),	œuvre,	{ work, (les œuvres de = the works of.
couple (m. and f.),	couple,	couple, two.	duty, divine service,	office,	pantry.
crape, critic, forgery,	crêpe, critique, faux,	pan-cake, criticism. scythe.	page (boy),	page,	{ page (of books).
foudre de guerre = great war- rior, etc.	foudre,	{ thunder, lightning.	parallel (com- parison),	parallèle,	{ a parallel (line).
knaves,	fourbe,	knavery.	pendulum, acme, in- definite period.	pendule,	clock.
guard (soldier),	garde,	{ protection, guard (troops).	As pronoun = nobody,	période,	{ definite pe- riod, sen- tence.
hymn, poem, book,	hymne, livre,	church hymn. pound.	stove, post, station,	personne,	{ As noun = person.
handle,	manche,	{ sleeve, Eng- lish Chan- nel.	hackney- coach, balance (of account),	poêle, poste,	frying-pan. post (office).
workman,	manceuvre	{ working (of machines), etc.	alumber, smile, trick, trumpeter, vase, veil,	remise, solde, somme, souris, tour, trompette, vase, volle,	coach-house, remittance. pay (of soldiers).
memoir, bill, thanks, mood (gram.), mould,	mémoire, merci, mode, moule,	memory. mercy. fashion. mussel.			sum. mouse. tower. trumpet. slime. sail.

10. *Amour, love, délice, delight, orgue, organ*, are masculine in the singular, feminine in the plural.

11. *Gens, people*, requires adjectives that precede it to be feminine, adjectives or pronouns that follow it to be masculine.

Ces vieilles gens sont soupçonneux. Les meilleures gens que j'aie jamais vus.

Tous, however, remains in the masculine unless accompanied by an adjective with a termination specially feminine.

Tous les gens. Tous les honnêtes gens. But: toutes ces vieilles gens.

The phrases *gens de robe, lawyers, gens d'épée, soldiers, gens de lettres, writers*, require, from their masculine force, all adjectives in the masculine.

III. FORMATION OF THE FEMININE OF NOUNS.

12. **First Rule.**—Add to the masculine *e* mute: *marquis, marquise; géant, géante; Louis, Louise*, etc.

Should the addition of *e* mute be made to *-er*, the first *e* becomes grave. Cf. 58, 1.

Ouvrier, ouvrière; écolier, écolière; berger, bergère.

13. **Second Rule.**—Nouns formed from present participles (as *chanteur* from *chantant*) change *-eur* into *-euse*.

danseur,	danseuse.	chasseur	{ chasseuse,
demandeur,	demandeuse.		{ chasseresse (poetical).
parleur,	parleuse.	chanteur	{ chanteuse,
pêcheur,	pêcheuse.		{ cantatrice (professional
porteur,	porteuse.		singer).
rieur,	rieuse.		

14. **Third Rule.**—Nouns in *-teur* often become *-trice*, especially when not derived from present participles.

acteur,	actrice.	inspecteur,	inspectrice.
admirateur,	admiratrice.	instituteur,	institutrice.
bienfaiteur,	bienfaitrice.	persécuteur,	persécutrice.
conducteur,	conductrice.	protecteur,	protectrice.
conservateur,	conservatrice.	Also:	
consolateur,	consolatrice.	ambassadeur,	ambassadrice.
débiteur,	débitrice; <i>debtor</i> .	empereur,	impératrice.
directeur,	directrice.		

15. **Fourth Rule.**—Change *-e* into *-esse*.

abbé,	abbesse.	traître,	traîtresse.	dieu,	déesse.
comte,	comtesse.	tigre,	tigresse.	enchanteur,	enchanteresse.
hôte,	hôtesse.	Also:		larron,	larronesse.
maître,	maîtresse.	défendeur, <i>defendant</i> ,		pêcheur,	pêcheresse.
négre,	négresse.	(law), défenderesse.		vendeur, <i>vendor</i> (law),	
prêtre,	prêtresse.	demandeur, <i>plaintiff</i> ,		venderesse.	
prince,	princesse.	(law), demanderesse.		vengeur.	vengeresse.
prophète,	prophétresse.				

16. So also *borgne, drôle, ivrogne, mulâtre, pauvre, Suisse* become, when used as nouns, *borgnesse, drôlesse, ivrog-*

ness, etc., though when used as adjectives, they do not change for the feminine. See 59, 1.

17. Fifth Rule—Change -en into -enne, -on into -onne, -et into -ette: arithméticien, arithméticienne; chien, chienne; musicien, musicienne; baron, baronne; lion, lionne; sujet, sujette.

18. The following nouns do not fall under the above rules:

canard,	cane.	époux,	épouse.	mulet,	mule.
chat,	chatte.	gouverneur,	gouvernante.	nourricier,	nourrice.
cochon,	coche.	héros,	héroïne.	paysan,	paysanne.
compagnon,	compagne.	Jean,	Jeanne.	serviteur,	servante.
czar,	zarine.	jouvenceau,	jouvencelle.	veuf,	veuve.
dindon,	dinde.	loup,	louve.	vieillard,	vieille.

19. The following feminines are from different roots:

bœuf,	vache.	frère,	sœur.	monsieur,	madame.
cerf,	biche.	gendre,	bru (belle-fille).	oncle,	tante.
cheval,	jument.	mâle,	femelle.	papa,	maman.
coq,	poule.	mari,	femme.	parrain,	marraine.

20. The following are used in masculine or feminine without change:

artiste,	élève,	malade,
camarade,	enfant (masc. in plu.),	pensionnaire, boarder,
compatriote,	esclave,	pupille, ward.
domestique,		

21. Nouns such as *artisan, chef, docteur, écrivain, imposteur, peintre, philosophe, poète, témoin*, being generally applied only to men, are used only in the masculine, even when applied to women.

Madame Rosa Bonheur est *un* peintre de premier ordre.

22. Names of animals that have received a fixed gender may have *mâle* or *femelle* added to indicate sex:

un moineau mâle,	une alouette mâle,
un moineau femelle.	une alouette femelle.

THÈME 1.

Translate. Comment on the Gender of the nouns employed.

1. Bonjour, mes élèves. Nous commençons cette après-midi la seconde partie des *Leçons de français*, n'est-ce pas? 2. Si, monsieur. Mais à propos du mot *partie*, puis-je vous faire une question? Quelle différence y a-t-il entre *partie*, *part* et *parti*? 3. Prenez cette pomme. Divisez-la en quatre parties. Nous sommes quatre ici. Donnez un morceau à chacun. Maintenant chacun a sa part. 4. Les partis politiques ne partagent pas ainsi, cependant, les fruits de leurs victoires. 5. Quels sont les fruits dont vous avez appris les noms, Georges? 6. Les fruits qui viennent sur des arbres sont les pommes, les poires, les prunes, les cerises, les pêches, les abricots, les bananes; sur des arbrisseaux, les groseilles, les framboises. 7. En ajoutant -ier au nom du fruit nous saurons

le nom de l'arbre sur lequel il vient. Ainsi,—pommier, poirier, abricotier, groseillier, etc. 8. Citez les principaux pays de l'Amérique, Marie. 9. Dans l'Amérique du Nord,—la puissance du Canada, les États-Unis, le Mexique ; dans l'Amérique du Sud,—le Vénézuéla, les États-Unis de la Colombie, l'Equateur, le Pérou, la Bolivie, le Chili, la république Argentine, le Brésil. 10. Les principaux fleuves de la France, Française. 11. La Seine, la Loire, la Garonne et le Rhône. 12. Les principaux métaux, Victor. 13. Le fer est le plus utile, l'or le plus beau. Il y a d'autres métaux,—l'étain, le plomb, le cuivre, le platine, etc. 14. Citez des femmes renommées. 12. Catherine II était le chef d'un grand empire. 16. Jeanne d'Aro a été le sauveur de la France. 16. Madame de Staël était un charmant écrivain. 17. Madame de Sévigné est un des meilleurs auteurs de la France. 18. Si j'étudie les sciences deviendrai-je savante, monsieur ? 19. Certaines gens étudient toute leur vie ; à la mort, ils ont tout appris, excepté à penser. 20. Je suis amateur de tableaux, comme beaucoup d'autres dames. 21. Citez des vices. 22. La poltronnerie, la malice, la haine, le mensonge. 23. Il faut bonne mémoire après qu'on a menti. 24. Citez des vertus maintenant, Jacques. 25. La reconnaissance, l'honneur, le courage, la bienfaisance. 26. Ne vous rappelez-vous pas un certain verset de la sainte Bible, Philippe ? 27. Maintenant donc ces trois vertus demeurent : la foi, l'espérance et la charité ; mais la plus grande est la charité. 28. Heureux ceux qui ayant bien vécu, meurent dans le Seigneur, car leurs bonnes œuvres les suivent.

EXERCISE 2.

1. The mother thinks always of the future of her dear children ; their happiness will make her own. 2. Every day she imagines to herself what they will become. 3. Mary is a musician ; she will become a great performer. 4. Henry likes reading ; he is fond of the works of the poets and historians ; his national hymn is, in my opinion (*selon moi*), very fine ; he will be an author. 5. Justice is the consoler of the afflicted and the avenger of the innocent. 6. John will be a lawyer ; plaintiffs, defendants will be his society. 7. Frances, however, will be his friend and his companion. 8. George loves travel, adventure, war. 9. Red, white and blue are his favorite colors. 10. He wishes to become a soldier. 11. He will be a faithful sentinel at his post. 12. Madame B. will be his friend and benefactress in India. 13. The great powers of Europe are England, Germany, France, Russia, Austria, Italy. 14. The north, the south, the east, and the west are the four cardinal points. 15. February is the shortest month. 16. After midsummer the days become shorter ; after Christmas, longer. 17. The little ship-boy is singing in (*à*) the shrouds. Do you hear his voice ? 18. The ancient hymns of the Church have the merit of simplicity. 19. Mary is a great laughter and a great talker. 20. A Canadian who did not know French too well was travelling in Belgium. 21. He alighted at a hotel. 22. He begged the servant to (*de*) show him the way to (of) the office, using, however, the word *office*. 23. "Excuse me, sir, I beg you. Strangers are not admitted to the pantry," replied the astonished servant.

24. "There is no land like England, where'er the light of day may be ; There are no hearts like English hearts, such hearts of oak as they be."

COMPOSITION 3.

The Spring.

The silence and desolation of winter are gone¹. The birds are singing in the wood ; the breeze brings the perfume of the gardens and the fields ; the sweet warmth of the sun makes itself felt² ; spring is come. What a³ beautiful season ! I do not wonder⁴ that spring has been⁵ represented as a young laughing girl laden with⁶ flowers ; for it represents youth, happiness and hope. Everything is renewed. In the meadow the violet, the primrose, the hepaticas, all the spring flowers may be found⁶ ; the field has a new robe of verdure ; along the river and in the forest, the willow, the beech, the birch, the maple, the oak, vie with one another in reclothing themselves with⁷ leaves of⁸ the most delicate tints. How joyous, too, is the song of the birds ! Every tree is an orchestra whose strains gladden the heart. Man divests himself of the cares of the world in listening to⁹ them. And the perfume ! The soft showers of spring have (are) fallen and have watered the earth ; the buds swell, and become leaves and flowers which emit a fragrance that embalms the air. It is the season, too, of movement and activity. There is not one blade of grass, not one plant, not one shrub, that does not feel a new life, and that does not lift its head to welcome the gentle warmth of the sun. The old world becomes young again ; the heroic ages return. Life is no longer a struggle, a labor, but an aspiration, a hope, a victory, when spring gives to the world its perfume and its songs.

¹parti. ²sensir. Use the infinitive. ³55. ⁴s'étonner, with subjunctive. ⁵Act. voice with on. ⁶chargé de. ⁷se revêtir (irreg.) à l'envi de. ⁸à. ⁹écouter.

II. FORMATION OF THE PLURAL (FORMATION DU PLURIEL).

I.

23. General Rule : Add s to the singular.

Nouns in French add s to form the plural : voisin, voisins ; voisine, voisines, etc.

landau, landaus, (sort of) carriage ; bleu, bleus, blue.

24. Exceptional Rules :

1. Nouns ending in -s, -x, -z remain unchanged : le lis, les lis ; la voix, les voix ; le nez, les nez, etc.

2. Nouns ending in -eu, -au, add x : feu, feux ; chapeau, chapeaux, etc. Except

3. Nouns ending in -al change al into aux : canal, canaux ; général, généraux, etc. Except

bal, ball ; cal, callosity ; carnaval : chal, jackal ; nopal, nopal (plant) ; régat, treat, which add

poirier, abri-
e l'Amérique,
Canada, les
Vénézuéla, les
e, le Chili, la
fleuves de la
et le Rhône.
s utile, l'or le
le cuivre, le
erine II était
sauveur de la
17. Madame
8. Si j'étudie
gens étudient
enser. 20. Je
s. 21. Citez
ensonge. 23.
s vertus main-
urage, la bien-
et de la sainte
emeurent : la
charité. 28.
neur, car leurs

children ; their
mes to herself
become a great
s of the poets
(moi), very fine ;
dicted and the
ntiffs, defend-
is friend and
9. Red, white
a soldier. 11.
B. will be his
of Europe are
the north, the
ts. 15. Feb-
days become
singing in (à)
hymns of the
laugher and
too well was
le begged the
however, the
are not ad-

day may be ;
arts of oak as

4. Seven nouns in -ail change
ail into aux; and seven in -ou
add x:

ball, <i>lease</i> .	bijou, <i>jewel</i> .
corail, <i>coral</i> .	caillou, <i>pebble</i> .
émail, <i>enamel</i> .	chou, <i>cabbage</i> .
soupirail, <i>air-hole</i> .	genou, <i>knee</i> .
sous-ball, <i>under-lease</i> .	hibou, <i>owl</i> .
vantail, <i>leaf of a door</i> .	joujou, <i>play-thing</i> .
vitrail, <i>stained window</i> .	pou, <i>louse</i> .
Also: bétail, <i>cattle</i> , bes- tiaux.	

Other nouns in -ail and -ou follow, of course, the General Rule.
Éventail, *fan*, éventails; détail, *details*; verrou, *bolt*, verrous; filou,
rogue, filous, etc.

25. A few nouns have two plural forms with a difference in meaning:

aïeul { <i>grand father</i> , aïeuls. { <i>ancestor</i> , aïeux.	œil { <i>eye</i> , yeux. { <i>œil-de-bœuf</i> , <i>oval window</i> , <i>œil-de- chat</i> , <i>cat's-eye (stone)</i> , etc., <i>œils- de-bœuf</i> , etc.
ciel { <i>sky</i> , cioux. { <i>sky in pictures</i> , <i>bed-tester</i> , <i>cli- mate</i> , etc., ciels.	travail { <i>work</i> , travaux. { <i>report of a minister</i> , <i>brake</i> , etc., travaux.

26. The parts of speech invariable by nature, when used as nouns,
remain invariable. The cardinal numerals are likewise invariable.

Les si, les pourquoi, les mais. | Trois quatre et un zéro font 444°.

27. The following foreign nouns are likewise invariable:

un (des) pater.	un (des) Te Deum.	un (des) in-quarto.
un (des) avé.	un (des) in-folio.	un (des) in-octavo.

28. The following foreign nouns keep their foreign plural:

dilettante,	lazarone,	quintetto,	gipsy,
dilettanti (or reg.)	lazaroni.	quintetti.	gipsies.

II. THE PLURAL OF COMPOUND NOUNS (PLURIEL DANS LES NOMS COMPOSÉS).

29. The mode of forming the plural of compound nouns depends on
(1) the Form of the compound, (2) The Meaning of its parts.

30. As to Form. The only words in French that admit of the
plural sign s (or x, etc.) are nouns and adjectives; consequently when
the compound word contains a pronoun, a verb, an adverb, or a preposi-
tion such parts of speech remain invariable.

un (des) passe-partout (by which to <i>pass everywhere</i>), <i>pass-key(s)</i> .
un (des) rendez-vous (verb and pronoun), <i>place(s) of meeting</i> .
des arrière-boutiques, <i>back shops</i> .

31. The compound made up of a noun and an adjective, or of two

in -ail change
seven in -ou

bijou, *jewel*.
caillou, *pebble*.
chou, *cabbage*.
genou, *knee*.
hibou, *owl*.
joujou, *play-thing*.
pou, *louse*.

General Rule.
verrous ; filou,

ce in meaning :

l window, œil-de-
stone), etc., œils-

aux.
minister, brake, etc.,

used as nouns,

invariable.

zéro font 444°.

e :

in-quarto.

in-octavo.

ral :

gipsy,
gipsies.

ANS LES NOMS

nouns depends on
its parts.

at admit of the
sequently when
b, or a preposi-

re), *pass-key(s)*.
of meeting.

tive, or of two

nouns, one used adjectively to the other, adds the plural sign to both parts.

basse-cour, *basses-cours*.
beau-frère, beaux-frères.
chat-huant, chats-huants.

chef-lieu, chefs-lieux.
oiseau-mouche, oiseaux-mouches.
chien-loup, chiens-loups.

Feminine compounds with *grand'* do not take the plural sign with the adjectives :
des grand'mères, des grand'tantes.

32. The compound made up of two nouns connected by a preposition adds the plural sign only to the first. (Cf. fathers-in-law.)

un arc-en-ciel, des arcs-en-ciel (*bows in the sky*), *rain-bows*.
un chef-d'œuvre, des chefs-d'œuvre (*pieces of work*), *master-pieces*.
un croc-en-jambe, des crocs-en-jambe, *trip(s)*, etc.

In the words *hôtel-Dieu*, *chief hospital*, *timbre-poste*, *postage-stamp*, the preposition *de* is understood. Consequently we write *des hôtels-Dieu*, *des timbres-poste*.

33. Where the compound assumes the form of an ordinary noun by the omission of the hyphen, the General Rule applies.

Consequently we must say, notwithstanding their composition :

un pourboire, des pourboires, *tip(s)*.
un pourparler, des pourparlers, *conference(s)*.

The following words still vary :

un gentilhomme, gentilshommes, <i>nobleman</i> .	monseigneur, messeigneurs, <i>my Lord</i> .
un monsieur, messieurs.	madame, mesdames.
une demoiselle, mesdemoiselles.	

34. As to Meaning.—The influence of the Meaning often affects the application of the rules as to Form. It sometimes happens that the noun in the compound has a singular force even when the compound is plural. When this is the case the noun remains invariable.

un (des) abat-jour (to cast down the light), *shade(s)*.
un (des) réveille-matin (to waken in the morning), *alarm-clock(s)*.
une (des) perce-neige, (flowers which pierce the snow), *snow-drop(s)*.
un (des) porte-monnaie, *purse(s)*.
un (des) porte-malheur, *person(s) bringing bad luck*, etc.

So also we may regard the words :

un (des) coq-à-l'âne, *rambling speech(es)*.
un (des) tête-à-tête, *private conversation(s)*.
un (des) pied-à-terre, *lodging(s) on the road, temporary lodgings*.

35. Verb and noun.—With compounds of a verb and a noun object, in which the noun may be taken in a plural sense when the compound is plural, there are sometimes two plural forms possible.

(ACADÉMIE.)

(LITTÉRÉ.)

un porte-drapeau, <i>ensign</i> , des porte-drapeaux.	des porte-drapeau or porte-drapeaux.
un porte-montre, <i>watch-stand</i> , des porte-montre.	des porte-montre or porte-montres.

The form with the plural sign is more common however, and no doubt will prevail : des garde-robes, des garde-fous, etc.

The plural noun may be required by the sense even with the singular noun : un porte-clefs, *a turnkey*.

III.—PLURAL OF PROPER NOUNS (PLURIEL DANS LES NOMS PROPRES).

36. Proper Names of Counties follow the General Rule : les deux Amériques.

Proper names of persons are invariable ;

Variable ;

1. Used strictly as proper names.

a. Used figuratively to indicate a class of persons resembling those whose names are employed.

Les Turenne, les Duval, les deux Corneille.

Les Shakespeares sont rares.

2. Used oratorically for a real singular.

b. Used to indicate great historical families.

Les Corneille, les Molière, les Racine ont illustré le règne de Louis XIV. (= Corneille, Molière, Racine ont, etc.)

Les Stuarts, les Scipions, les Bourbons.

3. Used figuratively for names of books.

c. Used figuratively for names of paintings, editions, etc.

J'ai acheté deux Shakespeare, deux Télémaque.

Il a des Elzéviros précieux, des Raphaëls.

IV. NOUNS USED ONLY IN THE PLURAL.

37. The following nouns are used only in the plural :

alentours, *neighbourhood*.
archives (f.), *archives*.
catacombes (f.) *catcombs*.
environs, *neighbourhood*.
débris, *ruins*.

frais (dépens), *expense*.
funérailles (obsèques), *funeral*.
mœurs, *manners*.
ténèbres, *darkness*.
vivres, *provisions*.

38. With the secondary meaning of the plural in the following nouns there is no corresponding singular :

ciseau, ciseaux, *chisel(s)*.
ciseaux, *scissors*.
gage, gages, *pledge(s)*.
gages, *wages*.

lumière, lumières, *light(s)*.
lumières, *enlightenment*.
vacance, vacances, *vacancies*.
vacances, *holidays*.

THÈME 4.

Translate. Comment on the formation of the Number of the nouns.

1. Comment forme-t-on le pluriel d'un nom ? 2. En ajoutant un s au singulier, monsieur. 3. Pas toujours, mon ami. 4. C'est là la règle générale, monsieur ; les noms terminés au singulier par s, x, z sont invariables, et les noms en au, eu, prennent x au pluriel, et presque tous les noms en al font leur pluriel en aux. 5. Récitez les noms en al et ceux en ail qui ne suivent pas la règle générale. 6. Traduisez : C

r, and no doubt

singular noun : un

NOMS PROPRES),

General Rule: les

vely to indicate

resembling those

employed.

es sont rares.

icate great his-

es Scipions, les

tively for names

ions, etc.

irs précieux, des

pense.

ues), funeral.

s.

following nouns

s, light(s).

es, enlightenment

es, vacancies.

aces, holidays.

ans.

ajoutant un s au

C'est là la règle

par s, x, z sont

, et presque tous

es noms en al et

Traduisez: C

ince compte vingt rois dans ses aïeux. 7. Les hommes sont toujours genoux devant le pouvoir. 8. Les hiboux sont des oiseaux de nuit qui ont les yeux ronds. 9. Les absents ont toujours tort. 10. Répondez-moi pourquoi d'un enfant et vous en ferez un homme. 11. La mémoire de mes aïeux m'est chère. 12. Les Pope, les Swift, les Addison ont illustré le règne d'Anne d'Angleterre. 13. Sur le rivage on trouva les gouvernails des vaisseaux. 14. Les agneaux se mettent à l'abri de la pluie sous les arbrisseaux. 15. Les bateaux pour l'Angleterre partent le jeudi et le samedi. 16. Les si et les mais arrêtent tout. 17. Les nobles ont visité les basses-cours. 18. Un petit livre contient souvent plus que des in-quarto. 19. Faites-moi grâce de tous ces détails. 20. Prenez trois un et deux quatre et vous aurez 11, 144. 21. Mes sœurs ont des dents atroces. 22. Les souriceaux sont les petits des souris. 23. Les ah ! les oh ! expriment la surprise ; les ha ! les ho ! marquent la douleur. 24. Les pourquois sont souvent très embarrassants et les parce que très embarrassés. 25. Comment écrit-on au pluriel les mots composés qui suivent : ver à soie, timbre-poste, arc-en-ciel, tire-bouton, chou-bouchon, arrière-boutique, vice-président, eau-de-vie, chien-loup, procès-verbal, chef-lieu, fer à cheval, arrière-garde, garde-barrière, bas-relief, grand-mère, grand-père ? 26. Indiquez comment sont formés les adjectifs : chauves-souris, coffres-forts, corps-de-garde, rouges-gorges, chefs-d'œuvres, gardes-champêtres, hôtels-Dieu, garde-robres, loup-garous, bouche-trous, manches à balai, toiles d'araignée, contes de fées, épiques, des post-scriptum, des Te Deum, des on dit.

EXERCISE 5.

The animals that play the principal parts (*rôle m.*) in fables are the foxes, monkeys, lions, wolves, rabbits, hares, frogs, rats, grasshoppers, cats and asses. La Fontaine's Fables are masterpieces ; they are read in the palaces of kings and the huts of peasants. 3. Let us take our La Fontaines and go to the woods where the birds, the brooks, the flowers and the trees will contribute to the pleasures of reading. 4. That is a good idea, I love walks. 5. Shall we take our Shakespeares and Molières to go ? 6. We shall have enough books. Books stop thoughts—and arguments also sometimes. 7. I should like to know who are the La Fontaines and Molières of our country ? 8. Tell me who are its (115) heroes and its Platons, and I shall tell you who are its great poets. 9. Well, if we have no great writers, we certainly have great travellers and explorers. 10. Yes, the Jacques Cartiers, the La Salles, the Champlains have made illustrious the history of French Canada. 11. With regard (*à propos de*) the exploits of these men, have you ever read Parkman's works ? 12. It is in those books that I have found the details of their labors, their adventures, their trials and their victories. 13. They are heroes, these first French colonists. 14. But here we are arrived. How cool the wood is ! 15. Let us sit down on the grass. We can see the clouds of the sky and the water of the lake, and even hear the waves. Here we shall soon forget the dust and burning winds of the town, the disputes, the clamors, the passions of men. 17. Before reading our names, give me some sentences to translate into French,—difficult ones. Well, translate : The Condés, the Guises, and the Bourbons are the great historical families of France, as the Tudors, the Stuarts, and the Bolphs are those of England. 19. Bolts may stop robbers, but they

cannot stop thought. 20. The isthmus of Panama unites the two Americas. 21. Cakes and playthings attract the eyes of children more than the splendour of jewels or stained windows. 22. Since's and why's are the scarecrows of poetry. 23. Autumn rewards the works of the laborers. 24. Our brothers-in-law, our sisters-in-law, our great-uncles and great-aunts have arrived. 25. In descending the rivers of these countries we saw on the banks the flocks of the shepherds; the fields, the orchards, the hedges of the farmers; the white houses, the churches, the schools of the villagers. 26. Sometimes (*tantôt*) ruined castles raised the towers surrounded with (*de*) trees, crowned with (*de*) vines.

COMPOSITION 6.

Perrette.

Perrette, having on her head a milk-jug¹ was going gayly to market. The morning was fine; the birds were singing; it was the month of flowers and songs. Perrette's heart began to suggest to her poems, projects, enterprises. She formed sweet dreams for herself as she reckoned in her thought the price of her milk. Eight pints at four cents a² pint made thirty-two cents. Thirty-two cents are even more than enough³ to⁴ buy a hen. I shall have eggs, and the eggs will become chickens. It will be very easy to raise the chickens in the little yard of our house, and defy the fox, cunning as⁵ he is, to⁶ approach them. In selling my chickens I shall have enough to buy a new dress—red—yes, red suits me the best. I shall not lack⁷ lovers, but I shall refuse them all even without disdain. Thereupon⁸ Perrette makes with⁹ her head what she had conceived in her imagination: behold¹⁰ the milk-jug on the ground¹¹. Far well, eggs¹², chickens, dresses, lovers.

Who is the man who does not build castles in the air¹³? The wise as well as the foolish. Every day these aerial edifices are built and every day they fall. The poetry of our dreams becomes the prose of the commonplace realities of life. Every day each of us repeats the story of Perrette and her milk-jug.

¹pot au lait. ²43,2. ³de trop. ⁴pour. ⁵tout rust que. ⁶de. ⁷manquer de. ⁸l'instant. ⁹de. ¹⁰voilà. ¹¹à terre. ¹²48,2. ¹³faire des châteaux en Espagne.

III. THE USES OF THE NOUN.

39. The Noun in French is used in two chief senses: I. In a Determinate Sense; II. In an Indeterminate Sense.

40. I. *The Determinate Sense* :—

1. May refer to a particular object, person, quality, etc.:

Le garçon a le livre. L'Angleterre est le pays que j'aime.
La vertu de ce vieillard.

Thus used, the noun is said to be Particular.

2. May refer in a general way to all objects, persons or to the quality signified by the noun.

Les filles aiment les fleurs. L'homme est mortel.
Le vice est odieux.

Thus used, the noun is said to be General.

3. May refer to a part (some) of the object, objects, persons, etc., signified by the noun.

Nous avons des livres, de la craie (*chalk*). Voilà des hommes.

Thus used, the noun is said to be **Partitive**.

4. May refer vaguely and indefinitely to any object person, etc., signified by the noun.

Un jour dans un salon (*drawing-room*) il y avait un Espagnol et un Anglais.

Thus used, the noun is said to be **Indefinite**.

41. II. *The Indeterminate Sense :*

The noun may again be used, not with reference to the objects that it may signify, but to the qualities that these objects may be thought to possess, to the intention rather than the extension of the noun. It may by itself be used adjectively, or by the help of a preposition may become adjectival or adverbial in force.

Son père est médecin. Un bateau à vapeur. Agissez en homme.

Thus used, the noun is said to be **Indeterminate**.

I. 1. THE PARTICULAR NOUN. THE USE OF THE ARTICLE.

42. The Particular Sense is indicated by placing before the noun the article *le, la, les*, or other definite word such as *mon, ce*.

The Article consequently is used before Particular Nouns :

43. A. With Common Nouns.

1. L'homme et le garçon sont ici.

Cet élève a mon livre et le vôtre.

Viens, mon ami ; allons, mon fils.

2. The Weights and Measures for selling.

Le drap se vend dix francs le mètre.

Ces cerises se vendent cinquante centimes le kilogramme.

3. Often after *avoir* to denote a characteristic of Mind or Body.

Cet homme a les cheveux noirs. (= les cheveux de cet homme sont noirs.)

Ces femmes ont le teint beau (*fine complexion*) et le nez aquilin.

NOTE.—Notice that what is singular in the individual remains singular in describing more than one.

Exceptions.

44. The Article is not used with Particular Nouns :

a. Often in Titles of Books, Chapters, etc. ; in Addresses of Residence ; with the Vocative Noun.

Chapitre X. Grammaire française. Livre de lecture.

Hôtel Corneille, rue Corneille 5, quartier Latin.

Courage, soldats, tenez ferme.

45. B. With Proper Names of Localities.

1. COUNTRIES: Le Canada et les Etats-Unis.

Masc. names of countries generally keep the Article, even when used adjectively.

Bois du Brésil.

Puissance du Canada.

Un esclave du Congo.

Histoire du Portugal.

2. CONTINENTS: L'Europe et l'Afrique.

3. MOUNTAINS: Le mont Blanc est le sommet le plus élevé des Alpes.

4. RIVERS: Le Volga, le Danube et le Rhin sont les principaux fleuves de l'Europe.

5. SEAS: La Méditerranée, la mer Noire.

6. LARGE ISLANDS: La Corse, la Sardaigne, les Açores.

(With smaller islands, *île* is generally preferred: l'île Sainte-Hélène; but the name may be used without the Article: Sainte-Hélène, Malte, etc.)

46. b. 1. With Proper Names of Persons, Towns, Villages, Months, Days of the Week.

Jean, Jacques et Louise sont allés à Paris.

Janvier et février sont les premiers mois.

Nous partirons mercredi ou jeudi.

NOTE.—Preceded by a qualitative adjective or noun, these proper names would take the article.

Le petit Jean, la belle Louise; le vieux Londres; la reine Victoria; le docteur Rameau; le rigoureux janvier.

(But saint, Sir, Lord, etc., are excepted as applied to persons: Saint Bernard, St. Pierre, Sir Thomas Bienvenu.)

2. *En* may precede singular feminine names of countries, which then do not take the article.

Aller en Angleterre, en France. Demeurer en Suisse.

(But: Aller au Mexique, au Brésil. Demeurer au Canada, aux Indes.)

NOTE.—When the noun is qualified we should use the Article: Dans l'Amérique du Sud.

3. *De* with *venir, arriver, partir* before a singular feminine noun follows the same construction.

Venir de France. Partir d'Europe. Arriver d'Angleterre.

(But: Venir du Japon. Partir du Mexique, etc.)

For feminine nouns used adjectively after *de*, see 57, 4.

4. Names of countries with a capital of the same name.

Naples est un beau pays.

I. 2. THE GENERAL NOUN. THE USE OF THE ARTICLE.

47. The General Sense is indicated by the use of the Article:

Le fer est plus utile que l'or.

Le boire et le manger sont nécessaires à la vie.

Le vice est odieux.

Il vient nous voir le samedi (*on Saturdays*).

48. Exceptions. The Article is omitted:

(1) Sometimes in Proverbs:

Contentement passe richesse.

Méfiance est mère de sûreté.

(2) Sometimes in Enumerations:

Citoyens, étrangers, ennemis, peuples, rois, empereurs le plaignent (*pity*) et le révérent.

The rules above (42-47) hold good even when the noun is understood. We must say: *Le cinquième et le sixième chapitre*, because distinct objects are referred to.

Custom however permits in such a case the use of the plural : Les cinquième et sixième chapitres.

When but one object is referred to, the Article is not repeated unless for emotional effect.

Le sage et pieux Fénélon. Le sage, le pieux, le vertueux Fénélon.

THÈME 7.

Translate. Comment on the presence or omission of the Article.

1. J'ai lu quelque part que le bruit du canon et le sifflet des balles étaient la musique favorite de Charles XII. Croyez-vous que cela soit vrai ? 2. Je le crois bien, car les guerriers aiment beaucoup la guerre. 3. A-t-on raison d'aimer la guerre ? 4. Je crois que non ; ce n'est pas la guerre, c'est l'amour des peuples qui est la garde des rois. 5. Vous aimez les plus doux plaisirs de la paix, n'est-ce pas ? 6. J'aime la musique et l'étude. 7. À quoi bon l'étude ? je ne l'aime pas. 8. L'étude, mon ami, guérit l'ennui. 9. Le temps, comme vous savez, s'arrête sur nos peines et fuit sur nos plaisirs. 10. Si l'on aime les livres, comme dit le comte Xavier de Maistre, les heures glissent alors sur vous et tombent en silence dans l'éternité, sans vous faire sentir leur triste passage. 11. En outre l'étude mûrit l'esprit. Que deviennent la richesse, le plaisir, la santé quand on ne sait pas en user ? Je me rappelle souvent le proverbe : Si jeunesse savait, si vieillesse pouvait ! 12. Pendant que nous sommes jeunes et forts, travaillons. 13. J'aime les beaux sentiments que voilà. Je vais m'appliquer à l'étude du français. Ayez l'obligeance de me lire les phrases du thème, et je les traduirai en anglais. 14. Chaque jour nous avertit que la mort approche. 15. Légereté, rapidité, prestesse, grâce et riche parure, tout appartient à l'oiseau-mouche. 16. Mon père demeure en Angleterre, le vôtre au Canada, mais le père du pauvre Georges demeure aux Indes. 17. Dans le royaume des aveugles le borgne est roi. 18. Malte n'est pas loin de la Sardaigne. 19. Février est le plus court des mois. 20. Les grands fleuves de l'Amérique du Nord sont le Saint-Laurent, le Mississippi et le Missouri. 21. L'empire du Brésil est dans l'Amérique du Sud. 22. Les îles Saint-Pierre et Miquelon appartiennent aux Français ; l'île de Terre-Neuve aux Anglais. 23. Ces demoiselles ont les cheveux noirs, les lèvres vermeilles et le teint clair. 24. Le mérite vaut bien la naissance. 25. Noblesse oblige. 26. Le livre est intitulé : Considérations sur l'état de l'Europe.

EXERCISE 8.

1. Do you like studying languages, Charles ? 2. I am very fond of studying them, sir ; but there are so many words to learn that I make but little progress. 3. It is the first step that costs, as the French proverb says. 4. One must remember, I suppose, that little brooks make large rivers, that ignorance is the mother of vice, and apply one-self to study. 5. You believe, then, that the study of modern languages is an important affair. 6. I do indeed (I well believe it). English, French and German are the three great languages of to-day, as Latin, Greek and Hebrew are those of past ages. France is the first nation of the world for art, Germany for philosophy, England and the United States for commerce, industrial genius and liberty. 7. In order well to understand the spirit and genius of modern times one must understand the languages and

literatures of these nations. 8. Yet Milton did not wish his daughters to learn (*imperf. subj.*) the different languages. How do you explain that? 9. I cannot explain it. Do you know the reason? 10. It is because, said he, one tongue is enough (*suffit à*) for one woman. 11. What a (55) wretched jest? I will remind punsters that the fear of the law is the beginning of wisdom. 12. Do you not like witticisms? 13. I do not like bad jests, near (*proche*) relations of the one you have just introduced. 14. Pardon me the bad jest, and tell me what you are studying. 15. I am studying geography. 16. Give me a few of the difficult sentences and I will translate them. 17. Sicily and Sardinia are between Europe and Africa. 17. The Spaniards in seeking the country of gold and precious stones discovered America. 18. Silver comes from Mexico and Peru, coal from England and the United States, diamonds from South Africa. 19. In that earthquake, all was swallowed up; churches, palaces, huts, men, women, children, everything disappeared. 20. Mountains are often the sources of rivers. 21. Mount Saint-Gothard, for (*par*) example, is the source of the Rhone; the Loire takes its rise (*source f.*) in the Cevennes, the Garonne in the Pyrennes, the Rhine in the Alps. 22. The inhabitants of the moon have blue hair, green lips and black teeth,—23. Nonsense (*laissez donc*)! down with (*à bas*) geography.

COMPOSITION 9.

The Flag.

One must¹ have been a² soldier, one must have passed the frontier and marched on roads that are no longer those of France; one must have been far³ from one's country, severed from every word of the tongue that one has spoken from infancy; one must have said to himself⁴ during the days⁵ of fatigues that all that [which] remains of the absent country is that shred of silk which flutters yonder,⁶ in⁷ the centre of the battalion; one must have had no other rallying point⁸ in the smoke of battle than that bit of torn stuff in order to understand, in order to feel all that⁹ that sacred thing that one calls the flag contains in its folds.

The flag, indeed¹⁰, know well¹¹, is, contained in a single word, rendered palpable in a single object, all that was, all that is the life of each one of us: the hearth where one was born¹², the bit of land where you grew up¹³, the mother who rocks you, the father who scolds you, the first year, the first tear, the hopes, the dreams, the fancies, the recollections; it¹⁴ is all these joys at once¹⁵, all gathered into one name, the finest of all: the Fatherland¹⁶.

JULES CLARETIE.

¹il faut. ²57. ³loigné. ⁴s'être dit. ⁵journées. ⁶là-bas. ⁷à. ⁸point de ralliement. ⁹Place next, 'contains in,' etc. ¹⁰mais. ¹¹sachez-le bien. ¹²199, 50. ¹³grandir. ¹⁴c'. ¹⁵à la fois. ¹⁶La Patrie.

I. 3. THE PARTITIVE NOUN. USE OF THE PARTITIVE SIGN.

49. Rule. The Partitive Sense of the noun is indicated by placing before it *de* and generally the Article or other definite word such as *mon, ce*.

Voici du pain, de la viande, de l'or, de l'encre et des plumes.

50. *De + le (la, les) must be used :*

1. If the adjective and the noun coalesce to give a simple meaning to the compounds, as in :
du beau monde, *so-* des honnêtes gens
ciety. *honest people.*
des beaux esprits, des petits garçons,
wits. *boys*
des bons mots, *wit-* des petites filles,
ticsms. *girls*
du bon temps, *a good* des petits pois, *green*
time. *peas.*
des grands hommes, des petits pâtés,
great men. *patties.*
des jeunes gens, des petits pains.
young people. *rolls.*

2. With *bien, much, many; la plupart, most :*

Il a bien *des* fleurs, la plupart *des* fleurs.

3. With *ne—que, only, but.*

Il n'a que *du* pain, de l'argent

4. Where the negative is only a rhetorical negative.

N'avez-vous pas *des* amis? *You have some friends I believe.*

52. Though preceded by an Adjective (a), or a Quantitative Adverb (b), or a Negative (c), the noun may be rendered more definite by the addition of a clause and take the Article.

(a) J'ai encore *des* bons livres que vous m'avez donnés.

(b) J'ai assez *des* romans dont vous parlez.

(c) Ce n'est pas *de* l'argent que je vous demande, ce sont des conseils. *My demand is not money, but counsel.*

Je ne vous fais pas *des* reproches frivoles. *My reproaches are not frivolous.*

[The negative in these sentences applies to the complement rather than to the noun itself.]

53. Both *de* and the article are omitted before Partitive Nouns.

(1) When these nouns are connected by *ni....ni, neither....nor.*

Nous n'avons *ni* maison *ni* jardin; *ni* or, *ni* argent.

(2) When these nouns are governed by the prepositions *sans* and *de.*

Un homme sans peur et

sans reproche.

Sans or *ni* argent.

Sans or et sans argent.

Un verre de vin.

Une sorte de fruit.

Il a besoin d'argent.

Une rivière couverte de vaisseaux.

Une corbeille pleine de

roses

La tête couronnée de

fleurs.

sh his daughters
do you explain
n? 10. It is be-
man. 11. What
fear of the law is
isms? 13. I do
have just intro-
you are studying.
the difficult sen-
cia are between
country of gold
nes from Mexico
diamonds from
d up; churches,
re.. 20. Moun-
othard, for (par)
s rise (source f.)
ne in the Alps.
lips and black
geography.

the frontier and
one must have
the tongue that
self during the
absent country
centre of the
point in the
understand, in
the flag contains

word, rendered
of each one of
ere you grew
the first year,
lections; it¹⁴
finest of all:

CLARETIE.

t de ralliement.
50. ¹³ grandir.

E SIGN.

d by placing
word such as

I. 4. THE INDEFINITE NOUN. USE OF *Un*.

54. The Indefinite Sense is generally indicated by *un* or other indefinite word, *aucun, chaque, plusieurs, etc.*, placed before each noun used indefinitely.

J'ai appris une nouvelle fâcheuse. Plusieurs hommes m'en ont parlé.

55. *Un* is not used :1. After *quel*.

Quel-coquin de valet ! *What a rogue of a servant.*

2. After *jamais* introducing a clause.

Jamais nuit ne parut plus lente à dévoiler l'horizon.
Never did a night seem slower in unveiling the horizon.

3. After *servir de, traiter de, tenir lieu de, etc.*

Vous leur servez de mère. Il l'a traité de fou. | Il vous a tenu lieu de père.
You serve as a mother to them. He has called him a fool. | He has been a father to you.

56. The Partitive and Indefinite signs are sometimes omitted in Proverbs,

Pierre qui roule n'amasse pas mousse.

THÈME 10.

Translate. Comment on the sign of the Partitive and Indefinite nouns.

1. L'heure de notre leçon est enfin arrivée. J'en suis bien aise. 2. Henri, dites-moi de quelles parties se compose une maison. 3. Une maison se compose d'une cuisine, d'une salle à manger, d'un salon, d'un vestibule, de chambres à coucher, d'un cave. 4. De quelles parties un train est-il composé ? 5. Un train se compose d'une locomotive, de wagons et d'un wagons de bagages. 6. Et la bibliothèque de notre lycée ? 7. Elle se compose de dictionnaires, de romans et de quelques poètes. 8. Il n'y a pas dans la bibliothèque des livres aussi beaux que les vôtres—ou faut-il dire : de livres aussi beaux ? Je ne parle jamais sans faire des fautes. 9. La première phrase est correcte. Voir 52(c). 10. C'est pourquoi l'on dit : Je n'ai pas de l'argent pour le dépenser follement. 11. Oui, mais c'est pour une autre raison qu'on dit : N'avez-vous pas de la santé, de la fortune, des amis ? que vous faut-il de plus ? 12. J'aimerais bien le français, monsieur, s'il n'y avait pas tant de règles. 13. Pas de roses sans épines. 14. Cela me rappelle que les rosiers sont couverts de fleurs. Un bouquet de roses servirait d'ornement au pupitre. 15. Je vais cueillir un bouquet de violettes aussi. 16. Georges est-il encore absent ? 17. Il est à la campagne, monsieur. Il y a avec lui des jeunes gens qui disent des bons mots. Il prend du bon temps. 18. Il faut que nous nous divertissions un peu aussi. Vous avez entendu parler de l'homme, qui, voulant vendre sa maison, était si sot qu'il en colportait une pierre pour servir d'échantillon. 19. C'est Molière, je crois, qui a dit dans une de ses comédies : "Quoi ! quand je dis : Nicole, apportez-moi mes pantouffles, et me donnez mon bonnet de nuit," c'est de la prose ? Oui, c'est de la prose." 20. Voilà de la prose, voici de la poésie :

La vie est brève,
Un peu d'amour,
Un peu de rêve,
Et puis—bon jour !

La vie est vaine,
Un peu d'espoir,
Un peu de haine,
Et puis—bon soir !

EXERCISE 11.

1. That poem has grace, sentiment, and much melody, but it is a kind of poem that I am not too fond of. 2. It contains too much pessimism for me also. 3. There are lives that are not vain, but full of noble thoughts and good actions, and I prefer to look on the bright side of things (*voir les choses en beau*). 4. But there are, are there not? so many tears, disappointments, sorrows in life that the poet is right to look on the dark side of things. 5. I know young people who think as you do. But you know well that if there are tears in life, there also smiles, pleasures, joy, happiness. If there are sad tragedies, there are also brilliant comedies; and life itself (*même*) is neither a funeral train (*convoi funèbre*) nor a carnival. 6. There are poets who say that the world is a theatre, without beginning and without end, where heroes, villains, parents, children enter and (*se*) withdraw; but where is only one Spectator. Is that philosophy, poetry or common sense? 7. It is poetry. But now some sentences of English to translate. 8. There are mines of gold and silver, but there are no mines of friendship and truth. 9. Thrushes and other birds fill our woods with (*de*) melodious songs. 10. I have still some of the engravings that you sent me, but I have none of the books that you gave me. 11. What a beautiful view! Have you not eyes? 12. She has no other relatives than her cousin. 13. Chatham and Burke were great orators. 14. Firmness united to gentleness is a bar of iron surrounded with (*de*) velvet. 15. A great heart, said (*disait*) a king of Persia, receives little presents with (*de*) one hand and makes large ones with the other. 16. The principal group of North American lakes (lakes of N.A.) is the group of Canadian lakes which comprises Lake Superior, Lake Michigan, Lake Huron, Lake Erie (*Érie*) and Lake Ontario. 17. But no more (*plus*) sentences! Are there not soldiers in town to-day? Is there not a review? There will be more spectators as soon as we [shall] have finished this last piece of French, this proclamation of Napoleon to his army of devoted soldiers. 18. "Soldiers," said Napoleon, "you have in a fortnight (*quinze jours*) gained six victories, taken twenty-one standards, fifty pieces of cannon, several fortresses, fifteen thousand prisoners, killed or wounded more than ten thousand men. 19. You have won battles without artillery, crossed rivers without bridges, made forced marches without shoes, bivouacked (*bivouaquer*) without brandy and often without bread. 20. Thanks be rendered you soldiers! The fatherland has the right (*le droit*) to expect great things from you. 21. You have yet combats to wage (*livrer*), towns to take, rivers to cross. 22. Friends be the liberators of the peoples, do not be their scourges (*fléau*).

COMPOSITION 12.

Not Enough Exercise.

The scene occurs¹ in a doctor's office. A young man enters with² a weary air and lets himself fall upon a chair.

The Doctor (apart): One more anæmic.³ (*Aloud, taking his hand*). Let us see your tongue!—Hum! tongue coated⁴! And the pulse—feeble, feverish. (*Rising with a consequential air*⁵.) Always the same story! People pretend to live without fresh air, without exercise; it is impossible. Look at me. What fine health [*que*] I have. Well, like you,

I should take the road to (of) the cemetery if I stayed all day seated in my room, without fresh air and exercise. You must take long walks, you need fresh air. If I made you a long prescription⁷ of a half-dozen of medicines, you would think (find) me no doubt clever. Oh, no, my only prescription is to² walk, to keep walking, always to walk.

The Patient : But doctor⁸

The Doctor : Just so⁹, now discuss ! You know more than I about (of) it. I repeat it to you, I counsel you to² take long walks, several times a¹⁰ day.

The Patient : But really, doctor, I am on my feet¹¹

The Doctor : Yes, yes, I know (it) ; like others you walk a great deal. Walk ten times more.

The Patient : But, doctor, it is my profession to

The Doctor : Of-course¹²; the profession does not permit, etc. That's old¹³ ! Take another profession which may permit¹⁴ you to take exercise ; health before everything ! But what do you do ?

The Patient : I am a¹⁵ postman.

The Doctor (in-consternation¹⁶) : Oh ! oh !—Let us see till¹⁷ I examine your tongue once more.

¹se passer. ²de. ³anémique. ⁴tout haut. ⁵chargé. ⁶air d'importance. ⁷ordonnance. ⁸monsieur le docteur. ⁹c'est cela. ¹⁰par. ¹¹sur pied. ¹²entendu. ¹³connu. ¹⁴permettre pres. subj. ¹⁵58. ¹⁶abasourdi. ¹⁷que.

II. THE INDETERMINATE NOUN.

OMISSION OF THE ARTICLE.

The Noun used in an Indeterminate Sense, since it is adjective or adverbial in function, does not take the Article.

1. The Indeterminate Noun is used predicatively with the verbs *être*, *devenir*, *se faire*, etc. to denote the Nationality, Profession, Trade, Station, Rank of the subject.

Votre père est médecin.	Mon frère est devenu soldat.	Mon oncle se fait avocat.
Your father is a doctor.	My brother has become a soldier.	My uncle turns lawyer.

NOTE 1.—The Noun force of the Indeterminate Noun is strengthened when an adjective qualifies it, so that it must usually be treated as a noun, and take *un* or *le*.

Votre père est un habile médecin.	Ferdinand était un guerrier accompli et un politique consommé.
Your father is a skilful physician.	Ferdinand was a skilful soldier and a finished statesman.

NOTE 2.—After *c'est* the predicate noun has always its full force as a noun: *C'est un Anglais. Ce sont des médecins.*

2. It is used likewise with verbs of Creating, Calling, Believing, etc.:

Napoléon le créa colonel.	Mendoza était appelé troisième roi d'Espagne.
Napoleon made him a colonel.	Mendoza was called the third king of Spain.
Je le crois honnête homme.	Il faut se montrer homme de courage.
I believe him an honest man.	One must show one's self a man of courage.

3. It is used in Appositions:

Ottawa, capitale du Canada.	Soldat, savant, matelot, à la fois, Colomb était
Ottawa, the capital of Canada.	A soldier, a scholar and a sailor at the same time
Henri huit, fils de Henri sept.	Columbus was
Henry the Eighth, the son of	Lamartine, célèbre poète et prosateur français.
Henry the Seventh.	Lamartine, a celebrated French poet and prose writer.

all day seated in
like long walks,
of a half-dozen
r. Oh, no, my
walk.

an I about (of)
, several times

k a great deal.

t, etc. That's
to take exer-

ill¹⁷ I examine

ce. ¹⁰ordonnance.
¹⁸connu. ¹⁴per-

jective or ad-

tre, devenir, se

se fait avocat.
turns lawyer.

when an adjecti-
on or le.

er accompli et

lier and a fin-

oun: C'est un

di d'Espagne.
of Spain
rage.

f courage.

mb était....
the same time

rançais.
I propose writer.

NOTE 1.—If the appositive noun is used for the purpose of distinguishing rather than of qualifying, its force as a noun is involved, and the Article must be employed.

Ce qui avait été dit par Jérémie le prophète.

What had been said by Jeremy the prophet.

Je vous parle de Rousseau, le poète, et pas de Rousseau, le philosophe.

I speak to you of Rousseau the poet, and not of Rousseau the philosopher.

NOTE 2.—The noun force rather than the adjective force is felt likewise in such a sentence as:

"L'homme qui a tué votre mère, **un** enfant héroïque, **une** sainte, **un** ange."

The man who killed your mother, (killing) a heroine, a saint, an angel.

NOTE 3.—Before a Superlative, the Article would be used.

Paris, ville de France. But : Paris, la plus belle ville de France.

4. By means of prepositions it enters into many Adjective Phrases.

garçon de boutique.	une voix de femme.	une vie d'homme.	vins de France.
shop-boy.	a woman's voice.	a human life.	French wines.
bateau à vapeur.	marché à volaille.	un homme sans peur.	roi (reine, couronne)
steamboat.	poultry market.	a man without fear.	d'Angleterre.
			king (queen, crown)
			of England.

5. By means of prepositions, it enters into many Adverbial Phrases.

Aller à pied.	Écouter avec intérêt.	Il le fait par amour (par
Agir en homme.	Suivre à regret.	haine, etc.).
Dix francs par personne (par	Riche à millions.	
an, etc.)		

6. It may complete the meaning of a verb, forming a Verbal Phrase.

ajouter foi, believe.	faire honneur, do honor.	parler français (anglais, *etc.)
avoir carte blanche, have	" horreur, cause horror.	" raison, talk sense.
full powers.	" mention, make men-	" chasse, musique, etc.
avoir besoin, chaud, froid,	tion.	talk of hunting, music, etc.
compassion, coutume,	" naufrage, suffer ship-	perdre courage, lose courage.
dessein, envie, fûlm,	wreck.	porter envie, envy.
honte, lieu, patience,	" place, make room.	porter bonheur (malheur),
soif, sommeil, soin,	" plaisir, give pleasure.	bring good (bad) luck.
sujet.	" présent, present.	prendre congé, take leave.
avoir congé, have holiday.	" réflexion, reflect.	" courage, take cour-
" mal, have a pain.	chercher fortune, seek for-	age.
" bonne (mauvaise)	tune.	" feu, take fire.
opinion.	" querelle, seek a quar-	" garde, take heed.
courir risque, run the risk.	rel.	" haleine, take breath.
faire attention, pay at-	demandar justice, ask jus-	" jour, appoint a day.
tention.	tice.	" médecine, take medi-
" banqueroute, fail.	" asile, ask shelter.	cine.
" beau (mauvais)	" pardon, ask par-	" part, share.
temps, be fine	don.	" patience, wait pa-
(bad) weather.	donner avis, inform.	tiently.
" cas, esteem.	entendre raillerie, bear jokes.	" plaisir, take pleasure.
" envie, excite envy.	(entendre la raillerie, know	" racine, take root.
" connaissance, be-	how to joke.)	rendre visite, pay a visit.
come acquainted.	mettre fin, put an end.	tenir lieu, take the place.
" fortune, make a for-	" ordre, put in order.	" parole, keep one's word.
tune.	" à mort, put to death.	trouver moyen, find means.

*With qualifications or comparisons the Article is used :

Il parle le français du Bas-Canada.

Il parle le français mieux que l'anglais.

THÈME 13.

Translate. Comment on the use of the Indeterminate Noun.

1. Bonjour, Charles, vous paraissiez bien triste. Qu'avez-vous? 2. Ah, monsieur, mon père a acheté un piano à queue, et mes trois sœurs

prennent des leçons de musique trois fois par semaine. 3. Vous vous donnez des airs de saule pleureur pour bien peu de chose. 4. Mais elles jouent trois heures par jour, monsieur, et parlent toujours musique, musiciens, etc., de sorte qu'il m'a été impossible d'étudier ma leçon de français. C'est en forgeant qu'on devient forgeron; c'est en étudiant qu'on devient savant. Mais si je n'étudiais pas, une vie d'homme n'y suffirait pas. 5. C'est parler raison, cela. Mais tout de même vous devez prendre patience. Peut-être si vous preniez des leçons de violon, elles mettraient fin à leur musique. 6. C'est alors, monsieur, que la fin couronnerait l'œuvre. 7. Œil pour œil, dent pour dent. Maintenant à l'œuvre, Charles; faites bien attention aux phrases du thème; traduisez. 8. Tel entend tambour et se croit général. 9. Puisque tu es homme, tu dois être humain. 10. Frédéric second, qui, tout roi qu'il était, fut un penseur profond. 11. Tout ce qui reluit n'est pas or. 12. Un ami, don du ciel, est le vrai bien du sage. 13. On appelle phare une tour illuminée pendant la nuit. 14. Les cuillers à thé et les verres à vin sont sur le buffet. 15. L'orgueil, vice qui se nourrit de vertus. 16. Napoléon était à la fois législateur, empereur et soldat. 17. Agissez avec sagesse, parlez avec prudence, travaillez avec constance et vous ferez honneur à votre école, à vos parents et à votre nom. 18. J'ai appris par cœur Zaire, tragédie de Voltaire. 19. Vous avez fait connaissance avec M. A. C'est un homme sans peur et sans reproche. 20. Vingt mille hommes restèrent sur le champ de bataille. 21. Une foule de nègres, hommes, femmes et enfants, le regardaient travailler avec curiosité. 22. On appelle fleuve un grand cours d'eau qui se jette dans la mer. Un plus petit cours d'eau s'appelle rivière. 23. L'infortuné Colomb avait perdu sa femme, l'amour, la consolation et l'encouragement de ses jours.

24. "Rien ne pèse tant qu'un secret;
Le porter loin est difficile aux dames;
Et je sais même sur ce fait
Bon nombre d'hommes qui sont femmes."

EXERCISE 14.

1. George La Salle, a friend of my father, paid us a visit yesterday. He has just passed his examination, and is now a physician. 2. He a physician! what a clever family! His brother is a professor, his sister a musician, and his father a celebrated lawyer. 3. He will do honour to his family, for all his professors esteem him and have a good opinion of his talents. 4. Unfortunately he came to take leave; he is going to leave for Montreal to-morrow. As soon as he shall have visited his parents and put [à] his affairs in order, he will seek his fortune in the United States. 5. What a pity! From indifference or disdain we let so many of our men of genius depart to become citizens of another country. 6. You are not yet gone, however. 7. Are you not ashamed? You know that I cannot-bear jokes. 8. I beg your (to you) pardon. It is I who do not know how to joke. 9. But tell me, is George a relative of La Salle, the French traveller who explored the Mississippi and gave to the country that he discovered the name of Louisiana? 10. I do not know. He has never mentioned it. His father is a French Canadian, and his ancestors have long lived in Canada. He himself is a Canadian

“ Bosquets que l’onde berce aux doux chants des oiseaux,
Des zéphyrs et des nids pittoresques, asiles,
Mystérieux et frais labyrinthe, Mille-Iles !
Chapelet d’émeraude égrené sur les eaux.”

Answers.

visit yesterday.
sician. 2. He a
ssor, his sister a
ll do honour to
good opinion of
he is going to
have visited his
fortune in the
disdain we let so
another country.
shamed? You
pardon. It is I
ge a relative of
ppi and gave to
? 10. I do not
nch Canadian,
is a Canadian,

1. A Frenchman and an Englishman were disputing with each other¹ which of the nations was the greater. The discussion grew warm². At last the Frenchman wishing to put an end to it in³ a polite manner exclaimed: "I willingly confess that if I were not a Frenchman, I should like to⁴ be an Englishman." "And I, sir, willingly confess," replied the other, "that if I were not an Englishman, I should like to be an Englishman."

2. A poor painter, who had a good opinion of his talent, was speaking one day of³ painting the ceiling of his drawing-room⁴. "At first⁵," said he, "I shall color⁶ it, and afterwards I shall paint it." "You would do better," said one of his friends, "to³ paint it at first, and afterwards to⁸ color it."

3. A cunning fox saw a horse in a meadow. Running to his neighbour the wolf. "Cousin," said he, "come *and* see the queerest⁹ animal that you have⁸ ever seen." "With pleasure," said the wolf. "It is a prey that heaven without doubt has sent us." They go. "Sir," said the fox to the horse, "we are your very humble and very obedient servants; we should like to become acquainted with you. Pray¹⁰, what is your name?" The horse, who was not a fool, answered [to] them, "You can read my name, sirs, under my hoof, where my shoemaker put it." The fox excused himself: "I cannot¹¹ read; my parents are honest but poor; they have taught me nothing. Those of the wolf are rich, they have taught him everything. He is a grammarian, a poet, a philosopher, a politician, and a rhetorician." The wolf, flattered by

this speech, approached¹² in-order-to read the name, and the horse gave him a kick¹³ that delivered him forever from all toothaches, and took leave of the two friends.

"Cousin, I have compassion on your misfortune. Henceforth, we must not believe the words of so impolite an animal," said the fox.

¹²*disputer*. ¹³*s'échauffer*. ¹⁴*de* [N.B. The English gerund is rendered into French by an infinitive or a noun, unless after 'in' (*en*).] ¹⁵*vouloir bien*. ¹⁶*d'abord*. ¹⁷*badigeonner*. ¹⁸*ensuite*. ¹⁹*le plus drôle*. ²⁰Use pres. subj. ²¹*de grâce*. ²²Use *savoir*. ²³*s'approcher*. ²⁴*détacher une ruade à*.

III. THE ADJECTIVE (DE L'ADJECTIF).

I. FORMATION OF THE FEMININE (FORMATION DU FÉMININ).

58. General Rule.—Add *e* to the masculine.

un grand jardin.	un homme poli.	il est âgé.
une grande maison.	une femme polie.	elle est âgée.

NOTE 1.—In adjectives ending in *-er*, the addition of *e* to form the feminine, requires also a grave accent to the ending.

premier.	cher.	passager.	ouvrier.
première.	chère.	passagère.	ouvrière.

NOTE 2.—The syllable *-(g)u* in French is mute (as figure, *fig*), though *gu* is sounded. Hence adjectives ending in *-gu*, when made feminine, require also the diæresis to preserve the sound of the ending.

algu, *alguë*, *acute*. | *ambigu*, *ambiguë*, *ambiguous*. | *contigu*, *contiguë*, *contiguous*.

59. Exceptional Rules—From etymological or phonetic reasons the following deviations from the General Rule occur.

1. Adjectives ending in *e* mute remain unchanged.

un honnête homme,	un jeune homme aimable,
une honnête femme.	une jeune fille aimable.

2. Adjectives in *-el*, *-eil*, *-en*, *-et*, *-on* double the final consonant, and add *e* mute.

cruel.	pareil.	chrétien.	net.	mignon.
cruelle.	pareille.	chrétienne.	nette.	mignonne.

NOTE 1.—The following in *-et* follow the General Rule (Note 1):

(in)complet.	concret.	(in)discret.	inquiet.	secret.
(in)complète.	concrete.	(in)discrète.	inquiète.	secrète.

NOTE 2.—The following adjectives likewise double the final consonant before *e* mute:

bas,	basse, low.	gras,	grasse, fat.	paysan,	paysanne, peasant.
bellot,	bellotte, pretty.	gros,	grosse, big.	profès,	professe, professed.
épais,	épaisse, thick.	las,	lasse, tired.	sot,	sotte, foolish.
exprès,	expresse, express.	nul,	nulle, null.	vieillot,	vieillotte, oldish.
gentil,	gentille, pretty.	pâlot,	pâlotte, palish.		

3. Adjectives in *-f* change *f* into *v*; those in *-x* change *x* into *s* before *e* mute.

neuf, neuve, newly-made.	bref, brève, brief.	furieux, furieuse, furious.
--------------------------	---------------------	-----------------------------

and the horse gave
pithaches, and took

Henceforth, we
said the fox.

dered into French by
abond. ^{badigeonner.}
avoir. ^{s'approcher.}

ECTIF).

OU FÉMININ).

il est âgé.
elle est âgée.

the feminine. requires

ouvrier,
ouvrière,
ough *gu* is sounded,
o the diæresis to pre-

contiguë, *contiguous*.

phonetic reasons

imable,
table.

final consonant,

mignon,
mignonne.

secret,
secrète.

nant before *e* mute:

paysanne, *peasant*.
professe, *professed*.
sotte, *foolish*.
vieillotte, *oldish*.

ge *x* into *s* before

rieuse, *furious*.

OTE.—The following in *-x* are irregular:

douce, <i>sweet</i> .	faux, fausse, <i>false</i> .	vi. <i>ix</i> (viell), <i>vieille</i> , <i>old</i> .
préfixe, <i>prefixed</i> .	roux, rousse, <i>red</i> .	

Adjectives ending in *-eur*, if derived from present participles,
change into *-euse*; if not so derived they change *-teur* into *-trice*.

(From Participles.)

(compant) trompeur, trompeuse, *deceitful*.

(attant) flatteur, flatteuse, *flattering*.

(Not from Participles.)

accusateur, accusatrice, *accusing*.

consolateur, consolatrice, *consoling*.

OTE 1.—Enchanteur, enchantresse, *enchanting*; vengeur, vengeresse, *avenging*;

pêcheur, pécheresse, *sinning*, are exceptions.

OTE 2.—Adjectives ending in *-érieur*, together with *majeur*, *mineur*, *meilleur* are
regular.

The following adjectives are irregular :

blanc, <i>white</i> .	Change <i>-c</i> into <i>que</i> .	bénin, <i>bénigne</i> , <i>benign</i> .
coite, <i>quiet</i> .	ammoniac, ammonlaque,	long, longue, <i>long</i> .
fraîche, <i>fresh</i> .	ammoniac.	malin, maligne, <i>malignant</i> .
française, <i>frank</i> .	caduc, caduque, <i>infirm</i> .	oblong, oblongue, <i>oblong</i> .
franque, <i>Frankish</i> .	public, publique, <i>public</i> .	sec, sèche, <i>dry</i> .
favori, favorite, <i>favorite</i> .	turc, turque, <i>Turkish</i> .	tiers, tierce, <i>third</i> .
	But: grec, grecque, <i>Greek</i> .	

OTE 3.—The following adjectives have a secondary form in the masc.
sing. before a noun or adjective beginning with a vowel or *h* mute. The
feminine is made from the secondary form.

un beau cheval, }	Plu. de beaux hommes	nouveau, }	fou, }	mou, }
un bel homme, }		nouvel, }	fol, }	mol, }
une belle femme, }	Plu. de belles femmes.	nouvelle, }	folle, }	molle, }

Generally, though not necessarily, *viell* before a vowel for *vieux*.

II. FORMATION OF THE PLURAL (FORMATION DU PLURIEL).

1. General Rule—Add *s* to the singular to form the Plural.

fou, fous; folle, folles; charmant, charmants; charmante, char-
mantes.

OTE—As all adjectives in the feminine end in *-e*, this rule will apply to any feminine
adjective, however irregular the masculine may be.

2. Exceptions :

1. Adjectives ending in *-s*, *-x* remain unchanged.

un homme gras et heureux,
des hommes gras et heureux.

un chapeau, gris et vieux,
des chapeaux, gris et vieux.

2. Adjectives ending in *-au* take *x*.

beau, beaux; nouveau, nouveaux.

OTE—So also hébreu, hébreux, *Hebrew*. Adjectives in *-ou* and *-eu* follow the
General Rule: fou, fous; bleu, bleus.

3. Adjectives ending in *-al* change *al* into *aux*.

un principe général
des principes généraux.

un devoir filial, municipal, national,
des devoirs filiaux, municipaux, nationaux.

OTE—Formerly many adjectives in *-al* followed the General Rule. These adjec-
tives to-day with the exception of *fatal*, *fatals*; *final*, *finals*, generally change *al*
into *aux*.

The Académie and Littré agree in regarding as without any masc. plural the adjectives *frugal, glacial, natal, pascal, naval*. The Académie would add to these: *autonai, colossal, jovial*, for which, however, Littré gives the plural in *aux*.

PLURAL OF COMPOUND ADJECTIVES (PLURIEL DES ADJECTIFS COMPOSÉS)

63. Compound Adjectives follow the rule of Compound Nouns keeping unchanged the invariable, but changing the variable parts of speech.

un homme ivre-mort,	un enfant premier-né,	un enfant bien-aimé,
des hommes ivres-morts.	des enfants premiers-nés.	des enfants bien-aimés.

NOTE.—Mort in *mort-né*, *still-born*, is invariable; *des enfants mort-nés*.

So also *nouveau* in the one expression *nouveau-né*: *des enfants nouveau-nés*. (But: *les nouveaux mariés*, etc.)

III. AGREEMENT OF THE ADJECTIVE (ACCORD DE L'ADJECTIF).

64. The Adjective in French agrees with the word to which it refers in Gender and Number.

Voici le bon père et la bonne mère de ces bons enfants.

65. Should the adjective refer to two or more nouns it must be made plural; if one of these nouns is masculine, the adjective must be masculine.

Le roi et le paysan sont égaux.	La rose et la violette sont belles.
Le père et la mère sont morts.	Une prudence et un désintéressement étonnants.

NOTE 1.—Care must be taken with adjectives that make a distinction in pronunciation between the masculine and the feminine forms, to place the nouns qualified by them so that the masculine noun stands next the adjective.

Il a la bouche et les yeux ouverts. (Not: *les yeux et la bouche ouverts*.)

When the masculine and feminine do not differ in pronunciation the order of the nouns is a matter of taste.

Une noblesse et un goût remarquables; un goût et une noblesse remarquables.

NOTE 2.—If the nouns qualified by the adjectives are (1) synonymous, or (2) such that the last sums up the preceding, the adjective remains in the singular.

(1) Toute sa vie n'a été qu'un travail, une occupation continuelle.

Elle trouvait dans ce jeune homme une noblesse, une grandeur d'âme étonnante.

(2) Le fer, le bandeau (*bandage*), la flamme est toute prête.

66. *Demi, half, nu, bare*, are invariable before, variable after the noun they qualify.

Une demi-heure.

(Also invariable used adverbially: une nation demi-barbare.)

Il va nu-bras et nu-tête.

Une heure et demie (=une heure et une heure demie.)

Dix heures et demie.

Une épée nue. Les arbres sont nus.

67. *Feu, late*, preceded by the article or other determinate word is variable; otherwise, it is invariable.

Votre feuë mère. La feuë princesse. | Feu votre mère. Feu la princesse.

68. The participial adjectives *attendu, considering, compris, including, excepté, excepting, passé, past, supposé, supposing, vu, considering*, used before

maso. plural the adjective have a prepositional force, and are invariable; used after the noun they have added to these: *autres* (other), *autres* (other), *autres* (other).

ADJECTIFS COMPOSÉS

Compound Nouns

fant bien-aimé,
sants bien-aimés.

ants mort-nés.

es enfants nouveaux

DE L'ADJECTIF.

d to which it refers

ns enfants.

nouns it must be

adjective must be

ette sont belles.

ut un désintéressé

nts.

inction in pronunciation

the nouns qualified by

uche ouverts.)

ation the order of the

noblesse remarque

mour, or (2) such that

ular.

nuelle.

randeur d'âme étouffée

.

after the noun they

nie (=une heure et

te.)

ie.

s arbres sont nus.

te word is variable;

Feu la princesse.

ris, including, excluding,

considering, used before

oun have a prepositional force, and are invariable; used after the noun they have

jectival force, and are variable.

oté une femme.

pria la nourriture.

six heures.

clus la copie de sa lettre.

trouverez ci-inclus (ci-joint)

copie de sa lettre.

Franc de poste, post-paid, is invariable before, usually variable after the

with which it is used.

J'ai reçu franc de poste (or franco) toutes vos lettres. | Une lettre franche de poste.

Avoir l'air. The expression avoir l'air is used sometimes in the sense of

the adjective following then agrees with the subject.

Ces fruits ont l'air gâtés.

These fruits appear spoiled.

The nouns aurore, jonquille, marron, olive, orange, ponceau, etc.,

employed as Adjectives of Colour, are invariable. Rose, écarlate, amarante,

etc., are variable.

Des habits marron; des robes olive. | Des chapeaux roses; des robes écarlates.

Compound Adjectives of Colour are usually invariable.

Une femme a les yeux bleu foncé (deep blue), et les cheveux châtain clair (auburn).

These invariable adjectives have *de* understood after the noun.]

THÈME 16.

Translate. Comment on the Form and Concord of the adjectives.

Traduisez la première phrase de notre thème. 2. Le temps et la

et sont impitoyables. 3. La deuxième, Marie, s'il vous plaît. 4.

On préfère les mains pures aux mains pleines. 5. Les autres phrases,

aise. 6. Voilà une femme et un homme heureux. 7. La vie du

ant est un combat, une lutte continuelle. 8. Le mont Blanc est la

plus haute montagne de l'Europe. 9. Nous préférons les robes bleu

clair aux robes jonquille. 10. Les nouveaux mariés sont partis à onze

heures et demie. 11. Ma feue tante parlait très bien l'anglais, mais pas

meille que feu mes sœurs. 12. À quoi bon recourir à des demi-remèdes

des grands maux. 13. Un bonheur, une félicité éternelle sera la ré-

compense du juste. 14. Les moments perdus ne se retrouvent jamais. 15.

Les jeunes filles sont très belles; elles ont les cheveux noirs, les yeux

bruns, les lèvres vermeilles et le teint clair. 17. Cette jeune fille ne

sait qu'avec la langue; c'est une parleuse perpétuelle. 18. Le

plaisir de parler est la plus vive jouissance de certaines personnes. 19.

Une longue habitude du mensonge devient une maladie morale. 20.

La pitié exceptée, toutes les passions s'éteignent avec l'âge. 21. Les

paris voyageaient nu-pieds et nu-tête; aujourd'hui ils voyagent par le

train de fer et se vêtent à la mode. 22. Une femme qui fut témoin de

la scène demeure dans une maison contiguë à la vôtre. 23. Les

hommes libéraux sont les avant-coureurs de la liberté. 24. Quelle diffé-

ence y a-t-il entre : On demande un homme et une femme âgés, et. On demande un homme et une femme âgée ? Et entre : Cette femme a l'air fier. Cette femme a l'air fière ? 25. Les femmes, disait M^{lle}. de Scudéry, sont coquettes quand elles sont belles, et grondeuses quand elles sont sages. 26. Je suis bien content de vous aujourd'hui, mesdemoiselles ; vous ferez des progrès rapides dans vos études, si vous êtes toujours aussi studieuses, aussi obéissantes et aussi attentives qu'aujourd'hui. Adieu.

EXERCISE 17.

1. I am always glad to find parents who are neither too rich nor too proud to (*pour*) let their children go sometimes barefoot, bareheaded to the country. 2. She was a wise mother who allowed Henry IV. *as a* child to traverse, barefoot like his peasant comrades, the mountains of his native country. 3. France owes to her the greatest of her kings. 4. One leaves the dusty streets of the noisy city. 5. One finds one's self in the green fields and woods. 6. One wades-through (*passer à gué*) the little streams or swims (*passer à la nage*) the larger ones. 7. One gathers the raspberries (there are none so fresh and sweet in the shops). 8. One stops (*s'arrêter*) at some pretty white farm house to drink pure cold water or fresh milk, or rests (*se reposer*) near [of] the spring shaded by the trees. 9. Nature is frank, honest, benign, and the boys, who love the green woods, the blue lakes, the clear brooks will love honest and generous sentiments. 10. Your sons have sun-burnt faces and arms, what matter (*qu'importe*) ; they have their minds (*dme f.*) clear, serene, cheered by (*de*) the remembrance of many happy days. 11. Their life is not incomplete, formal and bare ; it is full of happiness and joy. 12. All the places of the neighbourhood become familiar and dear to them ; the earth has for them great and perpetual charms. 13. Later in life when they [shall] have become successful merchants, famous soldiers, great scholars, they will return sometimes to the favorite places of their early (first) years. 14. They will experience (*éprouver*) a sweet satisfaction in (*à*) recognizing each hill, each valley, each tree. 15. They will wish perhaps to become again bare-foot, bare-headed boys, young, happy, glowing with (*rayonnant de*) the reflections of the dawn of life.

COMPOSITION 18.

Madame de Sévigné.

A widow at twenty-five [years] with a large fortune and a remarkable beauty, she devoted herself entirely to her children, to her daughter especially, the beautiful and cold Mme. de Grignan, for whom she had the most passionate love till the end of her life. The severe Armand used-to-scold her, saying that she was a pretty pagan, and that she was making of her daughter the idol of her heart. Let us excuse this innocent idolatry : we owe it to a correspondence which during twenty-seven of the most curious years of the reign of Louis XIV., was always as eager, as full of interest and liveliness as *on* the first day. It is through¹ motherly love, it is to amuse her daughter, who is² majestically bored³ in⁴ the midst of the fêtes and bickerings⁴ of provincial society, that she undertakes to⁵ transport Paris and Versailles to Aix. Her correspondence, like an enchanted mirror makes⁶ us acquainted with⁶ the

agés, et. On de
femme a l'air fier.
de Scudéry, son
les sont sages. 26.
es ; vous ferez de
aussi studieuses
adieu.

too rich nor too
feet, bareheaded
d Henry IV. as a
the mountains of
est of her kings.
One finds one's
ugh (*passer à quel-
ger ones*. 7. One
feet in the shops).
use to drink pure
[of] the spring
gn, and the boys.
brooks will love
e sun-burnt faces
ir minds (*âme f.*)
any happy days.
s full of happiness
ome familiar and
tral charms. 13.
essful merchants,
nos to the favorite
ience (*éprouver*) a
valley, each tree.
oot, bare-headed
the reflections of

and a remarkable
to her daughter
or whom she had
ne severe Arnand
and that she was
excuse this inno-
during twenty-
IV., was always
first day. It is
o is² majestically
ovincial society,
es to Aix. Her
aintained with⁶ the

court and its intrigues, the king, the Church, the theatre, literature,
war, fêtes, banquets, toilets. All this becomes animated and bright in
passing-through⁷ the mind of this charming woman. "I never had my⁸
imagination so struck," said⁹ the Duke of Villars-Brancas, after having
finished the reading of her letters ; "it seemed to me that with⁵ one
stroke of her wand, as if by¹ magic, she had made¹⁰ this old world come
out¹⁰—to make it pass in¹¹ review before me."

DEMOGEOT.

par. 57,5. ²s'ennuyer. ³à. ⁴tracasserie. ⁵de. ⁶faire connaître. ⁷traverser. ⁸r.
sait. ¹⁰faire sortir. ¹¹en. 57,5.

IV. POSITION OF THE ADJECTIVE (PLACE DE L'ADJECTIF).

73. The Determinate Adjectives (Demonstrative, Possessive, Num-
eral, Indefinite) precede the Noun.

Ces hommes ; mes frères ; cent hommes ; la sixième phrase ; cer- tains hommes ; différents (<i>various</i>) moyens.	EXCEPTIONS : Phrase deux (trois, etc.) ; deux livres quelconques ; une valeur septuple.
--	---

74. The Qualitative Adjective may precede or follow, but usually
follows.

Ces heureuses popu- lations.	Les îles charmantes.	L'immense et nouveau con- tinent.
Ces peuplades (<i>tribes</i>) heureuses.	Charmante île !	La température suave, égale et sereine.

The place the Qualitative Adjective holds is often decided by—I.
Meaning, II. Form, and III. Euphony.

I. ACCORDING TO MEANING.

75. *The Qualitative Adjective follows :* *The Qualitative Adjective precedes :*

1. To distinguish the object
qualified from other objects signi-
fied by the noun.

à l'occasion heureuse (malheureuse).
l'homme vertueux. Une femme véné-
rable.
des herbes amères.

2. Indicative of (1) Mental, (2)
physical qualities, qualities of (3)
time and (4) Space and Situation.

Un homme vertueux (courageux, in-
trépide).
Eau froide ; maison blanche ; lit dur.
Des regrets tardifs ; mort soudaine.
Paix intérieure ; nations lointaines.

a. To ascribe a permanent, es-
sential quality—such a quality as
you say is inherent in all the ob-
jects signified by the noun.

L'heureuse enfance. (All childhood is
happy.)
Le vertueux Aristide. Le vénérable Platon.
Ces amères déceptions.

b. Indicative of Personal Emo-
tion on the part of the speaker.

Adieu, charmant pays de France.
Va-t-en, misérable garçon.
Heureux celui qui trouve un ami.
Grande fut notre surprise.

Introduced by *que*, *combien*, the Predi-
cate Adjective must be in the predicate.
Que cette ville est belle !

76. The figurative sense of the adjective often, though not necessarily, gives the adjective a different position from that given by the literal sense.

Eau froide; un habit noir; une pomme douce. | La froide raison; les noires pensées; la douce chaleur.

ADJECTIVES THAT CHANGE IN MEANING AS THEY CHANGE IN POSITION.

77. The following adjectives are especially worthy of notice as following when taken in their Primary, Literal Meaning, as preceding in the Secondary, Figurative Meaning.

Primary Meaning, after the Noun.

Certain, reliable: une histoire certaine.
Cruel, cruel: un homme cruel.

Different, different: des avis différents.

Faux, faulty, wrong: une clef fausse.

Franc, frank: une femme franche.

Furieux, furious: un lion furieux.

Galant, attentive to ladies: un homme galant.

Haut: mer haute, (with the tide in).

Honnête, sitting, polite: un prix honnête; un homme honnête; un homme malhonnête (uncivil).

Maigre: un chien maigre (lean); les jours maigres (fast days); repas maigre (meal without meat).

Nouveau, new; un livre nouveau; un habit nouveau (of the latest fashion); du vin nouveau (last year's wine).

But: un habit neuf (newly-made).

Parfait, perfect, faultless: un ouvrage parfait.

Pauvre, lacking money: un homme pauvre.

Plaisant, amusing, laughable: histoire plaisante.

Pure, pure: âme pure; eau pure.

Seul, alone, apart: homme seul; voix seule.

Simple: corps simple (elementary); sold at simple, (artless, silly).

Triste, sad: un homme triste.

Vrai, true: une histoire vraie.

Secondary Meaning, before the Noun.

some: certains hommes, un certain espace, tiresome: un cruel homme.

several: différentes personnes l'ont dit.

imitation: une fausse (skeleton) clef.

downright, genuine: un franc fripon (rogue).

excessive: un furieux mangeur.

gentlemanly: un galant homme.

haute mer: open sea.

honest: un honnête homme; un malhonnête (dishonest) homme.

scanty, cold, insufficient: un maigre repas; une maigre réception; de maigres raisons.

un nouveau (fresh) livre; un nouvel (another) habit; de nouveau (just received) vin.

perfect in the quality signified by the noun: un parfait fripon.

lacking merit: un pauvre homme; (familiarily) mon pauvre (poor) ami.

ridiculous: un plaisant homme.

une pure (mere) illusion. But: une illusion toute pure (pure and simple).

only: un seul mot; un seul Dieu.

un simple (private) soldat; une simple (simple, mere, single) fleur.

un triste accueil, a sorry welcome.

downright, genuine: un vrai fripon.

78. In their Primary Meaning the following adjectives precede. In their Secondary Meaning they follow.

Cher, beloved: mon cher ami.

Dernier, last of a series: la dernière année du siècle.

Méchant, worthless: une méchante épigramme.

Même, same: la même nuit.

Propre, own: mes propres habits; les propres (same) termes.

expensive: une étoffe chère.

just elapsed: l'année dernière.

biting: une épigramme méchante.

self, very: la vertu même, la nuit même.

clean: mes habits propres; les termes propres (right).

The Adjectives bon, brave, grand, mauvais, have special meanings in a few expressions only. In other expressions they have their literal meaning, and precede.

Un bon homme=good easy man.

Un homme bon (homme de bien), virtuous man.

Un brave homme (femme, fille, garçon, gens)=worthy man, etc. (familiar).

Un homme (femme, garçon, etc.) brave=brave man, etc.

Un grand homme=great man.

Un homme grand=tall man.

Une grande dame=lady of rank.

Une grande dame=tall lady.

Un air mauvais=malicious look.

Un mauvais air=ill-bred look.

II. ACCORDING TO FORM.

B. Qualitative Adjectives follow :

1. If long.

Un cri général ; une femme acariâtre (*cross*).

The Adjectives in -able, -ible, -aire, -al, -el, -âtre, -eur, -ic, -if, -que, consequently follow.

2. Modified by a Long Adverb.

Un jour parfaitement beau.

3. If followed by a Phrase.

Une action digne d'éloge.

4. If derived from Participles or Proper Nouns.

Les vents rafraîchissants (*refreshing*).

L'équipage (*crew*) révolté.

Des nouvelles inattendues (*unexpected*).

La tour Eiffel. * La nation canadienne.

Qualitative Adjectives precede :

a. If one of the Short Adjectives : *beau, bon, court, grand, gros, jeune, joli, mauvais, moindre, meilleur, petit, sot, vaste, vieux*, etc.

Un beau jeune homme.

Une belle et noble mort.

b. These adjectives may be modified by a Short Adverb and still keep their place.

Un très (si, trop, bien, fort) beau jour.

c. Present participles that have become Verbal Adjectives often precede.

Charmant pays. Cette brillante nature.

d. A few Perfect Participles may precede.

Ces prétendus savants. Un rusé coquin.

Une feinte réconciliation. Ladite maison.

NOTE.—In translating from English into French, it must be remembered that there is not the same liberty in French as in English in the use of nouns as adjectives. The way in which the adjective force in French is secured may be seen in the following :

Un marchand de Londres = London merchant.

Un montre d'or = gold watch.

Une maison de campagne = country-house.

Un clocher de village = a village steeple

Un vin de France = French wine.

Un bois du Brésil = Brasil wood.

Une voiture à deux roues = two-wheeled carriage.

But: Le clocher du village = the village steeple.

With names of persons, however : Maison Vauquer ; Hôtel Cornaille, etc.

III. ACCORDING TO EUPHONY.

80. Considerations of Euphony sometimes affect the position of the adjective. Adjectives ending in a sibilant are sometimes placed with advantage before nouns beginning with a vowel.

Des brillants atours.

Des heureux avantages.

Ces brillants astres is harsh, however, compared with : *Ces astres brillants*.

81. Co-ordinate Adjectives follow the rules above, though when connected by conjunctions they often precede the Noun.

Where the adjectives differ in comprehension, the most restrictive comes first in English and last in French.

Un grand homme sec.

Un tall thin man.

Une grande table ronde.

Un pauvre petit cheval noir.

Un Dieu éternel et tout-puissant.

Un homme aimable et poli.

Arbres étrangers utiles.

Useful foreign trees.

Jurisdiction criminelle anglaise.

English criminal jurisdiction.

THÈME 19.

Translate. Comment on the Position of the adjectives.

1. Bonjour, mes élèves. Comment vous portez-vous, Charles? 2. J'ai un gros rhume depuis la semaine dernière, monsieur. 3. Vous prononcez très bien les sons nasaux, Charles. 4. À quelque chose malheur est bon. 5. Mais il va pleuvoir. Fermez, s'il vous plaît, la fenêtre derrière et ouvrez la fenêtre de devant. 6. Nous pourrions voir la tempête par la fenêtre ouverte. 7. Les nuages noirs ont déjà obscurci le ciel bleu. Le vent se lève. Quelle affreuse tempête! 8. Les rouges gorges, les moineaux, tous les petits oiseaux s'abritent dans les arbres. 9. Il pleut déjà à seaux. Quelles grosses gouttes! 10. C'est par un tel temps que le voyageur sur la mer Atlantique se rappelle les vacances passionnées de Théodore de Banville:

La grande mer sera notre cercueil;
Nous servirons de proie au noir naufrage.

11. Que la salle de classe est obscure! Nous pouvons à peine lire les phrases du thème. 12. Fermez les livres, je vous lirai les phrases les plus difficiles. 13. Le seul nom du printemps suggère les idées les plus riantes. 14. Ces rivières arrosent les différents pays de l'Europe. 15. Si j'étais riche, disait J.-J. Rousseau, sur le penchant de quelque agréable colline bien ombragée j'aurais une petite maison rustique, une maison blanche avec des contrevents verts. 16. Où sont situés le canal de Suez, le cap Horn, le phare Eddystone, la forêt Noire, l'océan Glacial arctique? 17. Le peintre offre à l'œil du spectateur enchanté les campagnes délicieuses de l'antique Sicile: des temples d'une architecture majestueuse élèvent leur front superbe par-dessus la forêt sacrée qui les entoure: l'imagination se perd dans les routes silencieuses de ce pays idéal; des lointains bleus à travers se confondent avec le ciel, et le paysage entier, se répétant dans les eaux d'un fleuve tranquille, forme un spectacle qu'aucune langue ne peut décrire. 18. C'est un de mes auteurs favoris qui a écrit cela, Xavier de Maistre. 19. À présent la pluie a cessé; le temps s'éclaircit. 20. Que le ciel est bleu! Après la pluie, le beau temps. 21. C'est la dernière phrase du thème français; traduisez la première phrase anglaise du thème vingt.

EXERCISE 20.

1. The azure sky, the blue sea, and the green earth are all the work of the Divine Artist. 2. The rough school of adversity is the best school. 3. Our good or our bad fortune depends on (de) our good or our bad conduct. According to (selon) a certain French writer the Canadian lives (habite) in eternal forests. What a ridiculous writer! 5. The Romance of a Poor Young Man, by Octave Feuillet is a very charming novel. 6. Who are great men of past ages? 7. I do not like your new acquaintance. He is not a frank man, he is a downright rascal. 8. I shudder at the mere thought of his presence. 8. The French Revolution is the most important event of modern times. 9. The steam engine, the railway, the electric telegraph are the greatest inventions of the nineteenth century. 10. He is a tiresome man; he is always relating absurd stories of the marble tables, the mahogany chairs, the magnificent library of his ancient dwelling. It is a pure illusion. 11. The private soldier

loved Colonel Genestas, who was a brave man. 12. The maple has a graceful and delicate beauty, and is well worthy of being the Canadian national tree. 13. During next winter we shall have several instrumental concerts in the large hall of our Collegiate Institute. 14. Public gardens, magnificent churches, broad walks adorn that beautiful Italian town. 15. The ministerial party is composed of capable and progressive men. One cannot say that of all political parties. 16. The worthy man! he has saved that boy from a dissolute, shameful, and wretched life. 17. I have a bad opinion of him who has a good opinion of nobody. 18. The year 1899 will be the last year of the nineteenth century. 19. The two boys gave prompt, vigorous, and even witty replies to the various questions. 20. In the sweet illusions of the ideal world we forget the bitter pains of the real world.

COMPOSITION 21.

Stony¹ Arabia.—Let one imagine² a country without verdure and without water, a burning sun, a sky ever dry, sandy plains, mountains even more arid, over which the eye extends³ and the sight is lost⁴ without being able to⁵ pause on any living object; a land dead, and, so to speak⁶, flayed by the winds, which presents only bones, scattered boulders, rocks standing⁷ or overturned: an⁸ absolute solitude a thousand times more frightful than that of forests.

BUFFON.

Circus Children.—I have, I trust, [a] great tenderness for all children; but I know that I have a special place in my heart for those poor little creatures who figure in circuses and shows, or elsewhere as "infant prodigies." Heaven help⁹ such little folk! It was (is) an unkind fate that did not make them commonplace, stupid, happy girls and boys like our own Fannys and Charleys and Harrys. Poor little waifs, that never knew any childhood—sad human midges that flutter for a moment in the glare¹⁰ of the gaslights and are gone. Pitiful little children, whose tender limbs and minds are so torn and strained by thoughtless taskmasters that it seems scarcely a regrettable¹¹ thing when the circus caravan halts¹² a while on its way to¹³ make a small grave by the wayside.¹³

T. B. ALDRICH.

¹Pétrée. ²s'imaginer. ³s'étendre. ⁴se perdre. ⁵pouvoir. ⁶pour ainsi dire. ⁷debout (verb). ⁸57,3. ⁹que le ciel aide. ¹⁰lumière éblouissante. ¹¹à regretter. ¹²faire haltepour. ¹³au bord de la route.

V. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (COMPARAISON DES ADJECTIFS).

82. The Comparison of Adjectives is made by means of *plus*, *more*; *moins*, *less*; *aussi* (si), *as* (so), for the *Comparative*; and of *le*, (*la*, *s*) *plus*, *most*; *le*, (*la*, *les*) *moins*, *least*, for the *Superlative*. An absolute Superlative may be made by means of any modifying adverb such as *très*, *bien*, *fort*, *infiniment*.

These auxiliaries of comparison must be repeated before each adjective compared.

83. POSITIVE: Il est poli (*polite*). Elles sont polies.

84. COMPARATIVE. { SUPERIORITY : Elle est **plus**
EQUALITY : Elle est **aussi** polie que sa sœur.
INFERIORITY : Elle est **moins**

NOTE 1—In negative sentences **si** may be used in place of **aussi**: Elle n'est pas aussi (si) belle que sa sœur.

NOTE 2—The article *must* be employed with the comparative in such sentences as :
Celui-ci est le plus fort des deux. | De ces deux jeunes filles, laquelle est la moins jolie.
This is the stronger of the two. | Of these two young girls, which is the less pretty?

NOTE 3—Should the comparative be of the nature: "The more diligent one is, the happier one is," the comparison in French must follow the rule: Plus on est diligent, plus on est heureux.

85. SUPERLATIVE. { SUPERIORITY : Elle est la plus jolie de toutes.
INFERIORITY : Elles sont les moins jolies de toutes.
ABSOLUTE : Vous êtes infiniment bon.

NOTE 1—The Possessive Adjectives may take the place of the Article:

Voilà mon plus grand dictionnaire: *There is my largest dictionary.*

NOTE 2—In the absolute construction, where there is no notion of comparison with others, **le plus, le moins, le mieux** (*best*) are employed to denote the highest degree of the quality possessed by the object. They are adverbial in function, and consequently *invariable*.

C'est le soir que cette jeune fille est le plus (le moins) belle.
It is in the evening that that young girl is the most (least) beautiful.

Compare with the preceding sentence:

Ce soir c'est une jeune fille qui est la plus jolie.
This evening it is a young girl who is the prettiest.

In the former sentence there is no idea of comparison with others,—the superlative is *absolute*. In the latter the comparison *la plus jolie de toutes* is completed mentally,—the superlative is *relative*, and *le* must vary.

86. There are three adjectives which of themselves indicate comparison: **meilleur**, better, best; **pire**, worse, worst; **moindre**, less, least.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
bon, good.	meilleur (never: plus bon) better	meilleure best
mauvais, bad.	(plus mauvais) plus worse	(plus mauvaise) pire worst
petit, little.	moindre less	moindre least

NOTE 1—**Plus bon** is used in the expression **plus ou moins bon**, better or worse: Ce livre est-il plus ou moins bon que l'autre.

NOTE 2—**Petit, plus petit, le (la) plus petit** must be used with reference to size. Es-tu plus petit que tes frères? Je suis le plus petit. *Are you smaller than your brother? I am the smallest.*

NOTE 3—The Adjective when compared is under the same rules as to position as the positive adjective; but *le* must be repeated when the adjective follows the noun.

Le plus petit livre. | Les livres les plus utiles. | Un fort beau jour.
The smallest book. | The most useful books. | A very fine day.

There are also a few words that have the force of absolute superlatives: **richissime** (extrêmement riche), **illustrissime**, **révérendissime**, etc.

lie que sa sœur.

i: Elle n'est pas aus

n such sentences as:

elle est la moins jolie
is the less pretty?

more diligent on
follow the rule: Plus

olie de toutes.

ins jolies de toutes
ment bon.

Article:

rest dictionary.

ion of comparison

denote the highest d

al in function, and co

e.

beautiful.

others,—the superlati

is completed mental

omparison: meilleur

Superlative.

meilleure

best

(plus mauvaise)

pire

worst

moindre

least

moins bon, better

a reference to size. E

aller than your brother

les as to position as

e follows the noun.

fort beau jour.

very fine day.

perlatives: richiss

etc.

VI. COMPLEMENTS OF ADJECTIVES (COMPLÉMENTS DES ADJECTIFS).

87. As in English, adjectives in French are often followed by a Complement.

Un homme *poli envers tout le monde*. | Un vaisseau *prêt à partir*.

The preposition to be employed before the complementary phrase depends on the character of the adjective. Generally speaking, adjectives that in English take *to*, in French take *à*; those taking *of*, *from*, *with*, take *de*; those taking *towards*, *envers*.

88. Adjectives followed by *à*.—The primary meaning of *à* being Tendency or Direction, adjectives that signify *Tendency towards*, *Fitness for*, etc., will be followed by *à*.

réable,	agrecable.	cher,	dear.	facile,	easy.
é,	easy.	difficile,	difficult.	intéressé,	interested.
dent,	zealous (at).	cruel,	cruel.	nuisible,	harmful.
n,	fit.	exact,	exact.	occupé,	busy.
				propre,	fit, etc.

NOTE.—De l'eau bonne à boire, *good drinking water*. Un terrain bon pour la vigne, *ground good for grapes*.

89. Adjectives with *de*.—The primary meaning of *de* being Origin, Separation, Means, adjectives that denote *Feeling* will take *de*; those denoting the origin of the feeling; those denoting *Absence*, *Scarcity* will take *de* to denote separation; while with many Adjectives *de* precedes the noun signifying the *Instrument* or *Agent*.

oureux,	in love with.	désolé,	grieved.	indigné,	indignant.
de,	eager.	fâché,	sorry.	inquiet,	uneasy.
content,	content.	fatigué,	tired.	mécontent,	displeased.
rieux,	curious.	honteux,	ashamed.	ravi,	glad.
sireux,	desirous.	inconsolable,	inconsolable.	reconnaissant,	grateful.

fférent, *different*. | éloigné, *remote, far*. | vide, *empty*. | absent, *absent*.

éri, *beloved*. | couronné, *crowned*. | ivre, *intoxicated*. | rempli, *filled, etc*.
timé, *esteemed*. | entouré, *surrounded*. | suivi, *followed*.

NOTE.—The complement after Adjectives of Dimension, etc., is introduced by *de*.

Un mur haut de six pieds. | Une garnison forte de quinze mille hommes.
est âgé de vingt et un ans. | Il est plus âgé que vous de deux ans.

90. Adjectives with *en*. After some adjectives denoting *Plenty*, etc., *en* is used.

ondant, *abundant*. | fertile, *fertile*. | riche, *rich*.
ond, *profuse*. | expert, *expert*. | etc.

91. Adjectives with *envers*. After adjectives denoting a *Feeling towards* in reference to persons, etc., *envers* is used.

n, good, kind.	généreux, <i>generous</i> .	officieux, <i>obliging</i> .
ritable, <i>charitable</i> .	indulgent (or à, pour), <i>indulgent</i> .	poli, <i>polite</i> .
mpatissant, <i>compassionate</i> .	ingrat, <i>ungrateful</i> .	reconnaissant, <i>grateful</i> .
r, harsh.	libéral, <i>liberal</i> .	respectueux, <i>respectful</i> .

NOTE.—Célèbre pour, *par, celebrated for*.

VII. ADJECTIVES EMPLOYED ADVERBIALY (ADJECTIFS EMPLOYÉS COMME ADVERBES).

92. The Adjectives *bas, low, bon, cher, dear, court, short, faux, false, frano, frank, juste, accurate, haut, high, net, clear, etc.*, are sometimes used to modify certain verbs. Employed thus adverbially, they must remain invariable.

Cette femme parle bas.
Cet homme parle haut.
Ces fleurs sentent bon.
Il a vendu sa vie bien cher.

Ces robes me coûtent cher.
Chante-t-elle faux ou juste.
Il nous a arrêtés (*stopped*) tout court.
Elle a refusé frano et net (*flatly*).

But : Des roses fraîches cueillies, *recently gathered roses*.

THÈME 22.

Translate. Comment on the Forms of Comparison, Complement, etc.

1. Aujourd'hui le temps est meilleur. Il ne pleut plus. Profitons d'un fort beau jour pour voir les phrases les plus difficiles sous un jour favorable. La première phrase, mademoiselle A. 2. Les belles actions cachées sont les plus agréables. 3. Turenne était aussi modeste et aussi sage que vaillant. 4. Toi la meilleure et la plus aimée des sœurs. 5. New York est la ville la plus commerçante de* l'Amérique. 6. L'honneur est plus puissant, plus sacré que la loi. 7. C'est l'homme le plus poli du monde. C'est un livre des plus ennuyants. 8. Au moindre signe vous serez obéi. 9. Sentez-vous quelque douleur? Pas la moindre. 10. Le Canada est un pays fertile en blé. 11. La crainte du mal est pire que le mal même. 12. L'homme qui est esclave de ses passions n'est aimé de personne. 13. Les grands hommes sont les plus exposés à la calomnie. 14. C'est à la haine des envieux qu'ils sont le plus exposés. 15. Heureux ceux qui sont amoureux de l'étude et qui y sont assidus! 16. Charles-Quint avec une armée forte de quatre-vingt mille hommes ne put s'emparer de la ville de Metz. 17. L'ignorance est toujours prête à s'admirer. 18. Le plaisir de la critique nous ôte celui d'être vivement touchés de très belles choses. 19. On paie bien cher le soir les folies du matin. 20. Tenez-vous droit, mesdemoiselles, ne vous penchez pas. 21. Elle n'est pas forte sur le piano, mais elle est riche en vertus et en beauté, sublime de soins pour son vieux père. 22. Cela est bon pour (contre, à) la fièvre. 23. Voilà du bois bon à brûler. 24. Le paysan a acheté un cheval bon pour la charrue. 25. Les Grecs tinrent ferme contre les Perses. 26. Léonidas vendit sa vie bien cher. 27. M. de Bismarck avait amené une femme qui a les plus grands pieds d'Outre-Rhin, et une fille qui marche dans les traces de sa mère.

28. Elle était de ce monde, où les plus belles choses
Ont le pire destin ;

Et, rose, elle a vécu ce que vivent les roses,
L'espace d'un matin.

*De after a superlative represents in English *in*.

XERCISE 23.

1. In love with a country (*champêtre*) life and curious to learn something of the Breton peasants, I was spending my summer holidays in a little Breton fishing village, celebrated for its picturesque beauty. 2. It is

EMPLOYÉS COMME

rt, short, faux,
clear, etc., are
us adverbially,

her.
uste.
ed) tout court.
et (flatly).

, etc.

Profitions d'un
un jour favor-
elles actions ca-
nodeste et aussi
des sœurs. 5.
que. 6. L'hon-
homme le plus
8. Au moindre
Pas la moindre.
e du mal est pire
es passions n'est
lus exposés à la
le plus exposés.
y sont assidus !
mille hommes ne
toujours prête à
d'être vivement
soir les folies du
penchez pas. 21.
en vertus et en
cela est bon pour
24. Le paysan a
cs tinrent ferme
her. 27. M. de
s pieds d'Outre-
e.
choses

s,

o learn something
olidays in a little
beauty. 2. It is

ne of the greatest pleasures, after the noise of the great world, to (*de*)
nd one's self thus remote from its tumults and its passions. 3. The
easants liked to see strangers, for their village was the prettiest in
rittany, and they were justly proud of it. 4. There was nothing
ore agreeable to them than to (*de*) welcome young artists eager to
ransform an exceedingly pretty landscape into (*en*) a very bad picture.

English peasants would have refused flatly to receive a stranger into
eir house (*chez eux*); the French peasant, polite to everybody, delighted
the opportunity of talking of Paris, England, America, receives him
ith (*à* 41.) open arms. 6. I was well pleased with my reception in
e house of Jean and Marie. 7. They (*c'*) were a happy couple, Jean
d Marie, beloved by their friends and relatives, respected by all the
llage. 8. The husband kind and generous to the best and dearest of
ives ; she, grateful for his love, devoted to her children and happiest
ear (*auprès de*) them. 9. I liked to see her busy with her work, to
ear her sing the old Breton songs. 10. She believed, no doubt, that
l her life would be filled with happiness, crowned with flowers.
1. But a few days after my arrival I was a witness of the most afflicting
ent in human life. 12. Death is always sad ; but it is saddest when
surprises us in the midst of health and hope. 13. Misfortune with
ez) fishermen is always the same story. 14. A tempest, unexpected,
esistible, arises, seizes the frail boat upon the waves, dashes it against
e cruel cliffs, and, perhaps in view of the cottage that is dear to him,
man has lost his life. 15. The morning sun looks upon (*regarder*) a
rse on the beach near the smiling sea. 16. One night there was a
rious storm, and Jean and other fishermen were absent from the
llage. 17. The poor wife, uneasy about the safety of her husband,
atched (*veiller*) all night. 18. Early in the morning there was a
ock (*on frappa*) at the door ; men were speaking low—they were
rying something dripping with water. 19. There was a great cry of
rror ; some one fell ; and great tears gushed (*couler*) from the eyes of
e fishermen, tender-hearted (compassionate) towards the poor woman
ho had lost what she had [of] dearest on earth.

COMPOSITION 24.

A Child's Heart.

"The other day an old woman, holding a bundle in her¹ hand, worn
th walking, sat-down² on the roadside to rest³. A group of three little
ldren, the oldest about nine⁴, stopped in-front-of⁵ the old woman,
ving not a word, but watching her face. She smiled. Suddenly the
ile faded (disappeared) and the corner of the calico apron went-up⁶
wipe-away⁷ a tear. The oldest child asked :

'Are you sorry [*de ce*] that you have n't any children ?'

'I had children once, but they are all dead,' whispered⁸ the old woman.

'I'm sorry,' said the little girl, as her chin quivered⁹. 'I'd give you
one of my little brothers, but I have only two, and I don't believe
t I'd like¹⁰ to spare one.'

'God bless you, child, bless you for ever,' sobbed the old woman and
a moment her face was buried (hidden) in her apron.

But, seriously continued the child, 'you may kiss us all once, and
little Ben isn't afraid, you may kiss him four times, for he's just as
et as candy.'

Pedestrians who saw three well-dressed¹¹ children put their arms around¹² that strange old woman's neck, and kiss her, were greatly puzzled. They did not know the hearts of children, they did not hear the woman's words as she rose to go. 'Oh, children, I am only a poor old woman, but you have given me a lighter heart than I [n'] have had for¹³ ten long hopeless years.'

¹à la. ²s'asseoir. ³89. ⁴devant. ⁵Say: she raised, etc. ⁶essayer. ⁷dire tout bas. ⁸Say: with a trembling (tremblement) of, etc. ⁹199, 29. ¹⁰se passer de. ¹¹bien mis. ¹²autour de. ¹³depuis.

VIII. NUMERAL ADJECTIVES (ADJECTIFS NUMÉRAUX).

93. The Numeral Adjectives are either Cardinal, to denote the exact number of objects signified by the noun, or Ordinal, to denote the relative rank held by the object signified by the noun.

The Ordinals are formed from the Cardinals by the addition of *-ième*, the mute *e* of the Ordinal, where such exists, being dropped. *Premier* (*première*), *second* (*e*), *cinquième*, *neuvième* are irregular.

Cardinal.	Ordinal.	Cardinal.	Cardinal.
1 un, (une, f.)	1st <i>premier</i> , (première, f.)	23 vingt-trois, etc.	90 quatre-vingt-dix
2 deux.	2nd <i>deuxième</i> , second(e).	30 trente.	91 quatre-vingt-onze.
3 trois.	3rd <i>troisième</i> .	31 trente et un(e).	92 quatre-vingt-douze.
4 quatre.	4th <i>quatrième</i> .	32 trente-deux.	93 quatre-vingt-treize.
5 cinq.	5th <i>cinquième</i> .	40 quarante.	100 cent.
6 six.	6th <i>sixième</i> .	41 quarante et un(e).	101 cent un(e).
7 sept.	7th <i>septième</i> .	42 quarante-deux.	102 cent deux.
8 huit.	8th <i>huitième</i> .	50 cinquante.	121 cent vingt et un.
9 neuf.	9th <i>neuvième</i> .	51 cinquante et un(e).	122 cent vingt-deux.
10 dix.	10th <i>dixième</i> .	52 cinquante-deux.	400 quatre cents.
11 onze.	11th <i>onzième</i> .	60 soixante.	490 quatre cent quatre-vingt-dix.
12 douze.	12th <i>douzième</i> .	70 soixante-dix.	1,000 mille. (In A. D. dates, when followed by another number, <i>mille</i> is usually written <i>mil</i> .)
13 treize.	13th <i>treizième</i> .	71 soixante et onze.	10,000 dix mille.
14 quatorze.	14th <i>quatorzième</i> .	72 soixante-douze.	11,562 onze mille cinq cent soixante-deux.
15 quinze.	15th <i>quinzième</i> .	73 soixante-treize.	
16 seize.	16th <i>sixième</i> .	74 soixante-quatorze.	
17 dix-sept.	17th <i>dix-septième</i> .	75 soixante-quinze.	
18 dix-huit.	18th <i>dix-huitième</i> .	80 quatre-vingts.	
19 dix-neuf.	19th <i>dix-neuvième</i> .	81 quatre-vingt-un(e).	
20 vingt.	20th <i>vingtième</i> .	82 quatre-vingt-deux.	
21 vingt et un(e).	21st <i>vingt et unième</i> .	83 quatre-vingt-trois, etc.	
22 vingt-deux.	22nd <i>vingt-deuxième</i> .		

NOTE 1.—The final consonants in *cinq*, *six*, *sept*, *huit*, *neuf*, *dix* are sounded when the words are used absolutely, or when followed by a vowel sound. *Neuf* is pronounced *neuv* before a vowel sound. *Cinq heures*; *neuf hommes*; *c'est le dix*. But: *Cinq garçons*; *neuf livres*; *di(x) bons enfants*. The *t* of *vingt* is pronounced in all the twenties, but not in the eighties; *g* is silent in both. *X* in *soixante* is pronounced *ss*.

NOTE 2.—The hyphen in the composites *dix-sept*, *dix-huit*, etc., must not be used when *et* joins the composing words; nor in joining *cent*, *mille*, etc., to a following number.

NOTE 3.—The plural *s* in *quatre-vingts* (80) and *deux cents*, *trois cents*, etc., must be dropped (1) when another number follows; (2) when they are used as ordinals. *Mille* (*mil*), *thousand*, is invariable. ('*Cinq milles*' means *five miles*.)

94. In speaking of sovereigns and days of the month the French employ the cardinal numerals, except for *first* (*premier*).

Henry premier, *Henry I.*
Charles deux (second), *Charles II.*
Jacques trois, *James III.*
Philippe cinq, *Philip V.*
Louis quatorze, *Louis XIV*

le premier janvier, *Jan. 1st.*
le deux février, *Feb. 2nd.*
le trois mars, *March 3rd.*
le quatre avril, *April 4th.*
le cinq mai, *May 5th.*

and so on with *juin, June*; *juillet, July*; *août, August*; *septembre, octobre, novembre, décembre.*

NOTE 1.—The Emperor Charles V. is always in French *Charles-Quint*. ('Charles cinq' means Charles V, King of France.) 'Sixtus V.' is *Sixte-Quint*.

NOTE 2.—In speaking also of *chapters, pages, sentences*, etc., we may, if we wish, employ the cardinals as ordinals. *Chapitre quatre-vingt* = *chapitre quatre-vingtième* = *quatre-vingtième chapitre, chapter eighty*. So *page quatre cent, phrase cent une*, etc.

Fractional Numbers

un demi.
(la moitié).
un tiers.
un quart.
un cinquième
un sixième.
un septième, etc.

Pluralized:
deux deniers.
trois tiers.
six quarts.
cinq septièmes.
dix vingt et unièmes,
etc.

Multiplicatives.

double, *double*.
triple, *triple*.
quadruple, *quadruple*.
quintuple, *quintuple*.
sextuple, *sextuple*.
septuple, *septuple*.
octuple, *octuple*.

décuple, *ten-fold*.
centuple, *hundred-fold*.
Or—*neuf* (*dix*, etc.) *fois*
autant may be used.

Collective Numeral Nouns.

une huitaine, *some 8*.
une dizaine, *about 10*.
une douzaine, *a dozen*.
une quinzaine, *about 15*.
une vingtaine, *a score*.
une trentaine, *some 30*.
une quarantaine, *about 40*.
une cinquantaine, *about 50*.
une soixantaine, *about 60*.
une centaine, *about 100*.
un millier, *about 1000*.
un million, *a million*.
un billion, *thousand millions*.

Cardinal.

90 quatre-vingt-dix
91 quatre-vingt-onze.
92 quatre-vingt-douze.
93 quatre-vingt-treize.
100 cent.
101 cent un(e).
102 cent deux.
121 cent vingt et un.
122 cent vingt-deux.
400 quatre cents.
490 quatre cent quatre-vingt-dix.
1,000 mille. (In A.D. dates, when followed by another number, *mille* is usually written *mil*.)
10,000 dix mille.
11,562 onze mille cinq cent soixante-deux.

NOTE 1.—The multiplicatives are either adjectives or nouns:

Mille est un nombre centuple de dix. C'est le centuple de dix.

Thousand is a number a hundred times ten. It is the hundred-fold of ten.

NOTE 2.—The Collectives, being nouns, must take the construction of nouns.

J'ai ici trois douzaines d'œufs. Une vingtaine de mille francs.

I have here three dozen eggs. About (some) twenty thousands francs.

Dix fois cent mille millions de francs font un billion de francs.

Ten times a hundred thousand francs make a thousand million francs.

IX. INDEFINITE ADJECTIVES (ADJECTIFS INDEFINIS).

MASC. FEM.

66. No, not any: aucun, aucune, { Il ne prend aucun soin. Vous n'avez aucune preuve.
aucuns, aucunes { Il ne fait aucuns préparatifs. Aucunes troupes ne furent mieux disciplinées.

Aucun is rarely used in the plural, and when used thus is employed with *nouns* that have no singular, or that have a special significance in the plural.

It has the force of *any* in doubtful questions, or after *sans*:

Avez-vous aucun ami?

Il est sans aucune ressource.

7. No, not any: nul, nulle, { Nul homme n'est par fait. Il ne va nulle part (no where).
nuls, nulles, { Il n'y a nuls frais. Nulles troupes.

Nul is synonymous with *aucun* (neg.) as above.

8. Some, certain: certain, certaine, { Un certain M. Angier. Dans une certaine histoire.
certains, certaines. { Certains écrivains. Certaines gens croient (believe).
(writers).

99. *Each, every*: **chaque, chaque**, | Chaque homme et chaque femme.
No plural.

100. *Many (a)*: **maint, mainte**, { J'ai lu maint(s) | Vous avez eu mainte
maints, maintes, { livre(s). occasion.
Maintes fois et maintes fois, *many and many a time*

101. *Several*: **plusieurs, plusieurs**. | Plusieurs hommes. | Il a plusieurs plumes.

102. *Some, any, a few*: **quelque, quelque**, { Quelque temps | Quelque femme n'a
quelques, quelques, { après, dit cela.
Nous sommes qua- Il a quelques robes.
rante et quelques
(*forty odd*).

NOTE 1—The Adjective *quelque* followed by *que* is to be translated *whatever*.

Quelque livre que vous ayez, *whatever book you have*.

Quelques bons ouvriers que vous ayez, *whatever good workmen you have*.

NOTE 2—*Quelque* is also used adverbially and is then invariable to modify an adjective or an adverb.

Il a acheté quelque (environ, à peu près) deux cents barils de pommes. *He has bought about two hundred barrels of apples.* Quelque (si) savants qu'ils soient. *However learned they be.* Quelque sagement qu'il agisse. *However wisely he acts.* Quelque bons soldats que soient les Français. *However good soldiers the French may be.*

103. *Whatever*: **quelconque, quelconque** { Il n'y a homme quelconque.
quelconques, quelconques { *There is no man whatever.*
Donnez-moi deux livres quel-
conques (*two books whatever, any two books*).

104. *Such*: **tel, telle** { un tel homme. | une telle femme.
tels, telles { de tels hommes. | de telles femmes.

NOTE.—Observe the place of *tel* after the indefinite. Similarly: Une pareille surprise. *Such a surprise*.

Notice also: Monsieur un tel, Madame une telle; Messieurs tels, Mesdames telles et telles. *Mr. So-and-So, etc.*

105. *One, not one, a*: **un, une** | Je n'ai pas un livre, pas une plume.

106. *Every, all*: **tout, toute** { Tout âge a ses plaisirs. | Toute femme. Toute
Tout le monde (*everybody*) la France.
est ici.
tous, toutes { Tous les jours, *every day*; | Toutes les trois se-
tous les deux jours, *every* maines, *every three*
other day; tous (les) quatre weeks.
m'ont dit cela, *all four*
have told me that.

NOTE 1.—In the sense of *chaque*, *each*, and of *plein*, *full*, *tout* is used without the Article.

Tout homme. Toute femme. Des livres de toutes sortes. Il agit (*acts*) en toute liberté.

NOTE 2.—*Tout* is also used adverbially, and then is invariable except before a feminine adjective beginning with a consonant or *h* aspirate, when it agrees.

Ils étaient tout (*quite*) étonnés. | Elles étaient tout étonnées. | Les choses sont tout à vous (*entirely yours*).

But: Cette femme est toute | Ces dames sont toutes sur- | C'est toute la même
mouillée (*wet*). prises. chose.

With a participle *tout* adds an idea of simultaneousness.

Tout en disant cela, elle s'en alla. *While saying that, she went away.*

the fourth, *Wednesday*; the fifth, *Thursday*; the sixth, *Friday*; and the seventh, *Saturday*. 4. The time that the earth takes (*employer*) to turn around the sun forms what is called a year. 5. There are three hundred and sixty-five days and a quarter in a year. 6. If we (*on*) give the year three times in succession (*de suite*) three hundred and sixty-five days, we are obliged the fourth time to give it three hundred and sixty-six. 7. When the year has three hundred and sixty-six days it is said to be (*dite*) leap-year (*bissextile*). 8. Tell us some years that were (have been) leap-years. 9. 1864, 1880, 1884, 1888; and 1892 and 1894 will be leap-years also. 10. The first month of the year is called *January*; the second, *February*; the third, *March*; the fourth, *April*; the fifth, *May*; the sixth, *June*; the seventh, *July*; the eighth, *August*; the ninth, *September*; the tenth, *October*; the eleventh, *November*; the twelfth, *December*. 11. Every month has thirty-one days, February, April, June, September and November excepted. 12. Now look at the clock. It is now 10.30. 13. What time have you? 14. It is 10.25 by (*à*) my watch? 15. What time have you, Charles? 16. It is 10.45 by mine. 17. That reminds me of a man who had so queer a little clock that, when it rang six o'clock and the minute hand (*grande aiguille*) was at V. and the hour (*petite*) hand at VII., he knew it was noon.

COMPOSITION 27.

The First Days of Canada.

One may say that Canada was discovered in 1497 and 1498, for in those years the two Cabots explored the coasts of Labrador and Newfoundland. It is to Jacques Cartier, however, that we owe the discoveries that began the historic life of the French in this country. Leaving St. Malo on the 20th of April, 1534, he arrived at Newfoundland on the 10th of May. During this first voyage he explored the Bay of Chaleurs, and landed in Gaspé. In his second voyage he left St. Malo on the 19th of May, 1535, with three ships and one hundred and twenty men, and entered, on the 10th of August—the Festival of St. Lawrence—[in] a gulf to which he gave the name of that saint. Ascending the River St. Lawrence, he discovered on the 1st of September the island of Orleans, and a few days afterwards Stadacona, now Quebec. On the 2nd of October he arrived at Hochelaga, now Montreal. After having lost¹ twenty-six men during the winter that he spent near Quebec, he returned to St. Malo on the 16th of July, 1536. In 1541 Cartier was for the third time sent-out by Francis I., built two forts near Cape Rouge, tried to² ascend the Lachine rapids, and returned to France. In 1549 the Sieur de Roberval, who had endeavored in 1542 to establish a colony at Cape Rouge, was lost at³ sea with some hundreds of companions. During fifty years the French abandoned all projects of colonization. Recommencing their efforts in 1598, they finally founded, in 1608, the city of Quebec, which marks the permanent establishment of Europeans in Canada.

Such were the first efforts to explore and to colonize a country which, less than three hundred years later, contains five million one hundred thousand inhabitants, and sends to the other countries of the world exports to the value of almost one hundred million dollars.

X. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE AND PRONOUNS (ADJECTIFS POSSESSIFS ET PRONOMS POSSESSIFS).

110. The Possessive Adjectives are:

MASC.	FEM.	
Sing. mon, ma (mon*),		} <i>my</i> .
Plur. mes,		
Sing. ton, ta (ton*),		} <i>thy</i> .
Plur. tes,		
Sing. son, sa (son*),		} <i>his, her,</i>
Plur. ses,		
Sing. notre,		} <i>its.</i>
Plur. nos,		
Sing. votre,		} <i>our.</i>
Plur. vos,		
Sing. leur,		} <i>your.</i>
Plur. leurs,		
		} <i>their.</i>

The Possessive Pronouns are:

MASC.	FEM.	
Sing. le mien, la mienne,		} <i>mine.</i>
Plur. les miens, les miennes,		
Sing. le tien, la tienne,		} <i>thine.</i>
Plur. les tiens, les tiennes,		
Sing. le sien, la sienne,		} <i>his, hers,</i>
Plur. les siens, les siennes,		
Sing. le nôtre, la nôtre,		} <i>its.</i>
Plur. les nôtres,		
Sing. le vôtre, la vôtre,		} <i>ours.</i>
Plur. les vôtres,		
Sing. le leur, la leur,		} <i>yours.</i>
Plur. les leurs,		
		} <i>theirs.</i>

*The second feminine form of the Possessive Adjective is used for ease in pronunciation when the adjective or noun following the possessive begins with a vowel or silent h.

Mon épée (f); *mon autre plume* (f.); *son espérance* (f. *hope*); *ton adresse* (f. *skill*), etc.

111. The Possessive Adjectives and Pronouns agree in Gender and Number, the Adjectives with the noun following them, the Pronouns with the noun understood after them.

Possessive Adjectives,
with the noun expressed:

Lui donnez-vous mon livre? Non, je lui donne **le mien**. ('*Livre*' is understood.)
Do you give him my book? No, I give him mine.
Lui donnez-vous mes livres? Non, je lui donne **les miens**. ('*Livres*' is understood.)
Do you give him my books? No, I give him mine.
Lui donnez-vous ma plume? Non, je lui donne **la mienne**. ('*Plume*' is understood.)
Do you give him my pen? No, I give him mine.
Lui donnez-vous mes plumes (my pens) ? Non, je lui donne **les miennes**. ('*Plumes*' is understood.)

NOTE 1—The Personal Pronouns with *à* are often used instead of the Possessive Pronouns.

Ce livre est à moi. Ces jardins sont à lui et à son père.

Note also. *J'ai un cheval à moi, I have a horse of my own.*

NOTE 2—The expressions *un mien frère, une mienne cousine; un sien neveu, un sien ami*, etc., are used familiarly for a brother of mine, a cousin of mine, etc. The student will do well, however, to prefer the expressions *un de mes frères, une de mes cousines*, etc.

NOTE 3—*Les miens, les tiens*, etc., may be employed to denote persons related to or dependent on the possessor: *Il a ruiné les siens, He has ruined his family.*

112. While in general the Possessive Adjective must be repeated before every noun to which it refers, custom admits the use of one possessive adjective in the plural before *père et mère*.

Il a vendu son cheval et sa voiture.
He has sold his horse and carriage

J'ai perdu mes père et mère. (So also: *tes* (ses, nos, vos, leurs) *père et mère*.)

113. The Possessive Adjective must be repeated before each of the adjectives preceding a noun, when they express opposite qualities.

Il jugera de notre bonne et de **notre** mauvaise conduite.
He will judge of our good or bad conduct.

LIMITATIONS IN THE USE OF THE POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

114. With parts of the body, etc., the Article is used instead of the Possessive Adjective, when the sense shows clearly who is the possessor. When the thing possessed is the object of an action, the dative (indirect) personal pronoun usually indicates the possessor.

J'ai mal à la tête. *My head aches.*
 Il a froid **aux** pieds. *His feet are cold.*

Je lui ai lavé la figure. *I washed his face.*

Je **me** suis fait mal au bras. *I have hurt my arm.*

To give explicit reference to the part of the body the Possessive Adjective is used.

Ma pauvre tête, que tu me fais mal !

J'ai lavé sa figure plus soigneusement que ses mains.

115. In speaking of things the Possessive Adjectives are not used when the possessor and the thing possessed are in different propositions. The possession is then denoted by **en + le** (la, les).

Le Saint-Laurent est un beau fleuve ; **le** cours **en** est souvent impétueux.
The St. Lawrence is a beautiful river ; its course is often impetuous.

Nous avons vu Paris ; nous **en** admirons **les** théâtres.

We have seen Paris ; we admire its theatres.

The Adjective would be used, however, if the thing possessed were the object of a preposition, or if the possessor were personified.

Nous avons vu Paris ; nous admirons la beauté **de** **ses** théâtres.

Rien n'épuise la terre ; plus on déchire **ses** entrailles, plus elle est libérale.

XI. DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS (ADJECTIFS DÉMONSTRATIFS ET PRONOMS DÉMONSTRATIFS).

116. *The Demonstrative Adjectives are :*

	SING.	PLURAL.
MASC.	{ ce , <i>this</i> , (cet)* <i>that</i> ,	{ ces , <i>these, those.</i>
FEM.	{ cette , <i>this</i> , <i>that</i> ,	

**Cet* is used before a noun or adjective in the masc. sing., beginning with a vowel or *h* mute: *cet enfant, cet homme, cet ancien colonel.*

The Demonstrative Pronouns are :

(1) In place of a given noun :

	SING.	PLURAL.
MASC.	celui , <i>this, that.</i>	ceux , <i>these, those.</i>
FEM.	celle , <i>this, that.</i>	celles , <i>these, those.</i>

(2) Absolutely, taking the place of no noun expressed or understood.

ceci, *this* ; **cela**, *that*.

(3) As the subject (in certain circumstances) of the verb *être*.

ce (invariable), *this, that, these, those, he, she, it, they.*

117. The Demonstrative Adjectives and Pronouns (1) agree in Gender and Number,—the adjectives with the nouns that follow them,—the pronouns with the nouns understood after them :

Adjective-Noun expressed :

Ce crayon. *This (that) pencil.*
Cet homme. *This (that) man.*
Ces crayons. *These (those) pencils.*
Ces plumes. *These (those) pens.*
Ces crayons.
Ces hommes.
Ces plumes.

Pronoun-Noun understood :

Mon crayon et **celui** de notre frère.
My pencil and that (crayon understood) of my brother.
 Ma plume et **celle** de votre frère.
 Mes crayons et **ceux** de votre frère.
 Mes plumes et **celles** de votre frère.

118. If we wish to make a distinction as regards nearness or distance between the objects spoken of, we must add *-ci (here)* to represent nearness, and *-là (there)* to represent distance.

Ce livre-ci est meilleur que ce livre-là.
This book is better than that book.

Ces livres-ci sont meilleurs que ces livres-là.

These books are better than those books.

Ces plumes-ci sont meilleures que ces plumes-là.

These pens are better than those pens.

J'ai deux livres; celui-ci est meilleur que celui-là.

I have two books; this is better than that.

Voyez-vous mes plumes; celles-ci sont bonnes, celles-là sont mauvaises.

Do you see my pens; these are good, those are bad.

J'ai ici du drap et de la soie; celle-ci est bonne, celui-là est mauvais.

I have some cloth and some silk; the latter is good, the former is bad.

119. Ceci, this, cela, that, (2) are used absolutely taking the place of no noun expressed or understood. They are really general names of things.

Donnez-moi ceci, gardez cela.

Give me this, keep that.

Ceci est plus facile que cela.

This is easier than that.

Qui vous a dit cela?

Who told you that?

Cela fait, je m'en allai.

That done, I went away.

NOTE 1.—Cela in colloquial language is often abbreviated into ça.

NOTE 2.—Cela (ça) is used of persons to express good-natured familiarity or contempt.

Voyez ces petits innocents, comme ça se régale!

See those little innocents, how they are feasting!

Ça ne sait ni A ni B.

He doesn't know A from B.

120. Ce (3), this, (that, these, those, he, she, it, they) is used as the Demonstrative Subject of the verb être.

1. When followed by a Pronoun, a Determinate Noun (40), or between two Infinitives used affirmatively.

C'est moi. C'est vous. C'est elle.
It is I. It is you. It is she.

Ce sont eux. Ce sont elles. Est-ce eux (elles)?

It is they. Those are they. It is they?

C'est cela. Ce n'est rien. Ce n'est personne.

Just so. It is nothing. It is no one.

C'est le père. C'est un Danois. C'est Henri.

It is the father. That is a Dane. It is Henry.

Est-ce là votre plume? Sont-ce là vos livres?

Is that your pen? Are those your books?

Vivre ainsi, c'est mourir.

To live thus is to die.

NOTE 1.—The noun or pronoun, as above, may be preceded by a preposition.

C'est à vous que je parle.

Pour qui est ce livre? C'est pour vous.

C'est à Louise que je parle.

C'est pour Louise.

NOTE 2.—The verb être, as above, may be preceded by *devoir* or *pouvoir*:

Ce doit être lui. Ce doit être Henri.

It must be he. This must be Henry.

Ce peut être mon ami.

This may be my friend.

NOTE 3.—Ce is used with an adjective in reference to a clause that precedes as *il* is used in reference to a clause that follows.

Vous avez tort, c'est évident. Il est évident que vous avez tort.

While *ce* as a pronoun is invariable, it must be remembered that the verb of which *ce* is the subject is variable. For the rules of variation, see Verb, 203, b.

2. **Ce** is used as the antecedent of **qui**, **que**, etc., to express the relative **what**.

- a. **Ce** qui est beau est utile. | **Ce que** vous dites est vrai. | J'ai **ce** dont j'ai besoin.
What is beautiful is useful. | What you say is true. | I have what I need.
- b. **Ce que** je crains (c') est d'être découvert. | **Ce que** j'admire (c') est son courage.
What I fear is to be discovered. | What I admire is his courage.
- c. **Ce que** j'aime le plus ce sont mes amis. | **Ce qui** m'attache à la vie c'est vous.
What I love most is my friends. | What binds me to life is you.

The pleonastic **ce** after **ce que**, as in *b* and *c*, summing up the preceding sentence, must be used if the predicate is a Plural Noun or a Personal Pronoun (*c*), but must not be used when the predicate is an Adjective (*a*). In other cases (*b*) its presence adds force to the sentence.

3. By means of **ce** and the verb **être** any member of the sentence may be made emphatic.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| C'est à vous que je demande cela. | I ask that of you. |
| C'est moi qui vous demande cela. | I ask that of you. |
| C'est cela que je vous demande. | That is what I ask of you. |
| C'est une belle ville que Paris. | A fine town is Paris! |
| C'est mourir que* de vivre ainsi. | To live thus is to die! |

**Que* precedes the real subject of the sentence in such inversions.

THÈME. 28.

Translate. Account for the form of the adjectives or pronouns.

1. Ce sont là des photographies, n'est-ce pas, Charles? 2. Si, monsieur, ce sont deux photographies de mes père et mère. Laquelle préférez-vous, celle-ci ou celle-là? 3. Je ne saurais vous dire laquelle est la meilleure des deux. Elles sont toutes deux très belles. 4. Je trouve l'expression meilleure dans celle-ci, mais dans celle-là la ressemblance est plus frappante. 5. Est-ce que c'est ce matin que vous les avez reçues? 6. C'est hier soir que je les ai reçues par la malle. Ce fut un grand plaisir de les recevoir. 7. Ce doit vous rappeler tous vos souvenirs de famille. Vous avez, je m'en doute, un peu le mal du pays. 8. Qu'est-ce que c'est que le mal du pays, monsieur? 9. C'est le regret qu'on a d'être éloigné de son pays. 10. Et forcé de passer les nuits et les jours à l'étude? 11. Ne dites pas cela. La patience est amère, mais le fruit en est doux. Il n'y a pas de plaisir plus beau que de se dire après avoir travaillé fort: J'ai fait mon devoir. 12. C'est un méchant métier que celui du paresseux, j'en conviens. 13. Voilà parler, cela. Maintenant souvenez-vous de ceci: Les jeunes gens disent ce qu'ils font, les vieillards, ce qu'ils ont fait; les sots, ce qu'ils se proposent de faire. 14. Le bavard dit tout ce qu'il pense, et l'honnête homme pense tout ce qu'il dit. 15. Si je ne fais pas mon devoir, faites le vôtre. 16. Sont-ce vos amis qui frappent à la porte. 17. C'est mon ami qui vient chercher ses livres et ceux de sa sœur. 18. Qu'est-ce qu'il va faire avec ses livres? 19. Il a perdu son père. C'est avant-hier que celui-ci passa des bras du sommeil dans ceux de la mort. Mon ami va se mettre dans les affaires. 20. Il va se sacrifier pour les siens. C'est un brave garçon que celui-là.

EXERCISE 29.

1. Lend me your grammar, please, Mary, I have mislaid mine. 2. I have not brought mine this morning; but I will get my sister's. It is in her desk. 3. Thank you. Have you found this lesson difficult? 4. Not so

press the

j'ai besoin.
I need.

on courage.
brave.

c'est vous.
you.

g sentence,
ut must not
essence adds

sentence

monsieur,
érez-vous,
meilleure
expression
plus frap-

6. C'est
isir de les
le. Vous
c'est que
cloigné de
ude? 11.
doux. Il
aillé fort :
du pares-
souvenez-
illards, ce
Le bavard
dit. 15.
amis qui
livres et
19. Il a
sommeil

s. 20. Il
A.

ne. 2. I
It is in
4. Not so

difficult as yesterday's. 5. What we have once well done renders easier all that we have to do. There were, however, more idioms in the latter than in the former. 6. I do not quite understand what you say. Tell us, please, what "idiom" means. 7. It is a construction peculiar to a language. If I say : *Qu'est-ce que c'est que cela ?* that is a French idiom, because it is a way of speaking that the English language does not use. 8. We have none in our language, however. 9. Certainly we have. Every language has its own. It is one of the greatest difficulties of foreigners to learn the idioms of our language. 10. One must then pay attention to the two languages in order to learn their idioms. 11. Just so. It is in comparing the idioms of the two languages that we shall make progress. Now, let us begin our lesson. Give me your exercise, Charles, we shall see its idioms and perhaps its mistakes. 12. I have not been-able-to (*pu*) do mine to-day, sir. I have not a book of my own, and my brother has lost his. 13. Lend me yours, Henry. 14. I have not mine, either (*non plus*). An accident has befallen me. 15. I see that you have your arm in-a-sling (*en écharpe*). What is the matter? 16. I was skating yesterday evening, and I fell on my hand, and have dislocated (*démis*) my wrist. 17. That is a great pity. Pleasures are sweet but their consequences often are fatal. 18. It is not my arm, however. 19. You speak like the honest Dutchman, who, when he has broken his leg in falling, said to the spectators that he was glad that it was (*fût*) not his neck. 20. Content is the health of the soul; discontent is its poison. 21. Seeing (*vu*) that you have not prepared your exercises, I shall read you a little piece of mine, which you will have the kindness to write in your note-books, and to translate for our next lesson.

COMPOSITION 30.

1. *The Wolf and the Lamb*.—A lamb was peaceably drinking in a brook. A wolf came to the same spot, and drank higher up. Wishing to begin a quarrel with the lamb, he asked in¹ a severe tone why the latter was disturbing² the water. The innocent lamb, surprised at this so ill-founded accusation, replied, with humble submission, that he did not see how that could be. "Sir," said he to him, "you see that I drink lower down, and that the water runs³ from you to me, and that consequently⁴ it is not I who disturb the water." "Rogue," said the wolf, "it is thou who hast spoken ill of me six months ago⁵ in my absence." "I was not born.⁶" "Then⁷ it was (is) your brother." "I have no brother, on my honor." At these words the wolf, seeing that it was useless to¹ reason longer against the truth: "Rascal," said he, "if it was (is) neither thou nor thy brother it was your father, and it is all one. Thereupon he seized the poor lamb and tore him to pieces.⁸

2. *What Will⁹ Is*.—Harrison was a carpenter's apprentice¹⁰ when the Parliament proposed the prize of £10,000 for the one who would invent a chronometer for the problem of longitudes. Harrison said to himself, "*I will gain that prize.*" He then threw-down the saw and plane, came to London, turned watchmaker's apprentice, worked forty years, and gained the prize. What do you say of that? Can that be called *will*? People have wished to invent easy methods, but they are pure

illusions. There are no easy methods for learning difficult things. The only way is to shut one's door, to¹ send word¹¹ that one is not at home, and to¹ work. J. DE MAISTRE.

¹de. ²troubler. ³couler. ⁴par conséquent. ⁵il y a six mois. ⁶nd. ⁷done (after the verb). ⁸en pièces. ⁹vouloir. ¹⁰garçon charpentier. ¹¹faire dire

XII. INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE (ADJECTIF INTERROGATIF).

121. Quel. The only Interrogative Adjective is *quel*, *which*, *what*. It is used immediately with the noun.

Quel livre avez-vous ?		Quels livres avez-vous ?
Quelle plume avez-vous ?		Quelles plumes avez-vous ?

122. With the verb *être* it may be used in qualitative relation to a noun that follows :

Quel est cet homme ?		Quelle est votre plume ?
What is that man ?		Which is your pen.

Quel que followed by *être* in the subjunctive is used adjectively.

Ces hommes quels qu'ils soient.		Quelles que soient vos vues.
Those men whoever they be.		Whatever your views may be.

IV. THE PRONOUN (DU PRONOM).

I. THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS (PRONOMS INTERROGATIFS).

123. The Interrogative Pronouns are : I. *qui* *qu' est-ce qui* *que* *quoi* II. *lequel* *lequel* *lequel*

I.

124. a. Referring to Persons :

Qui ? = Who ? Whom ?
 Qui parle ? Who speaks ?
 À (avec, de, contre) qui parlez-vous ?
 To (with, of, against) whom do you speak ?

À qui ? de qui ? = Whose ?

À qui est cette plume ?
 Whose is that pen ?

De qui êtes-vous fils ?
 Whose son are you ?

Use *à qui* = *whose*, when the sense "belonging to" is present.

* *Que* and *quoi* are used in exclamations.
Que (= combien) de belles vues ! How many fine sights !
Quoi, déjà ici ! What here already !

b. Referring to Things :

(1) **Qu'est-ce qui ? = What ?** Nominative.

Qu'est-ce qui me fait mal.
 What pains me ?

(2) **Quoi ? = What ?** Used after prepositions, or disjunctively.
 À quoi pensez-vous. De quoi parlez-vous ?
 Quoi de plus beau ? What (could be) finer ?

(3) **Que ? = qu'est-ce que ? = What ?** Direct Object of the verb.

Que dit-il ? Qu'est-ce qu'il dit ?
 Que faire ? Que dire ?
 What to do ? What to say ?

II.

125. Lequel. In reference to persons or things *lequel* is used with the force of *which* (*one*) ? *what* (*one*) ?

Lequel* de vos frères est ici ?		Lesquels de vos frères sont ici ?
Laquelle* de vos sœurs est ici ?		Lesquelles de vos sœurs sont ici ?
Desquels de vos frères parlez-vous ?		Auxquelles de vos sœurs pensez-vous ?
Which of your brothers do you speak of ?		Which of your sisters do you think of ?

*It will be noticed that *lequel* agrees with the noun understood after it.

II. THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS (PRONOMS INDÉFINIS).

126. The Indefinite Adjectives **aucun, nul, certain, plusieurs**, **tel, tout** are used also as Indefinite Pronouns.

Aucun n'est prophète chez soi.

Nul n'est prophète chez soi.

Certains disent cela.

Plusieurs m'ont dit cela.

Tel qui rit vendredi, dimanche pleurera.

Tout cède au charme de sa voix.

No one is a prophet at home.

No one is a prophet at home.

Some (certain) say that.

Several told me that.

Who laughs on Friday, on Sunday will weep.

Everything yields to the charm of his voice.

Tout as a noun preserves the *t* in the plural: *Plusieurs* *touts* distincts.
Everybody is in French *tout le monde*, *tous* (*tout*).

127. The following are used only as Pronouns:—**chacun, on, personne, rien, quiconque, quelqu'un, autrui, l'un l'autre, qui que ce soit**, etc.

128. **Chacun**: **Chacun** pense à soi.

Ces plumes coûtent un franc

chacun.

Each one thinks of himself.

Those pens cost one franc each.

Remark that *chacun*, referring to a preceding plural, generally requires *son, sa, ses* in sentences (a), where the phrase it introduces is not essential to the sentence. But in sentences (b), where the phrase is indispensable to the sentence, it requires *leur, leurs*:

(a) Ils apportèrent des offrandes au temple
chacun selon ses moyens.

Le médecin a reçu ses malades chacun
à son tour.

(b) Ils ont apporté chacun leur offrande.

Ils ont reçu chacun leur part.

There is nothing absolute, however, in this. Both constructions are admissible.

129. **Quelqu'un**: **Quelqu'un** m'a dit cela.

Y a-t-il quelqu'un chez vous?

Voilà des livres. En voulez-vous quelques-uns.

Quelqu'une de vous, mesdames.

Voilà des plumes. Donnez-m'en quelques-unes.

Somebody told me that.

Is there **any one** at your house?

There are books. Do you wish a few?

Some one of you, ladies.

There are pens. Give me **some**.

Taken absolutely, as in the first two examples, **quelqu'un** is always sing. masc., and is used for both genders.

Quelqu'un is not used in negative sentences.

130. **Autrui**: Parler mal d'autrui. *To speak ill of others.*

Autrui is never used in the Nominative.

131. **L'un l'autre**: Ils se louent l'un l'autre.

Aimez-vous les uns les

autres.

L'un et l'autre est (sont)

bon(s).

Il se méfie des autres.

Gardez les autres.

They praise each other.

Love one another.

Both are good.

He mistrusts others.

Keep the others.

NOTE 1—The same construction holds good with **ni l'un ni l'autre**, *neither*.

Ils ne sont venus **ni l'un ni l'autre**.

Ni l'un ni l'autre ne viendra (viendront).

They have neither of them come.

Neither will come.

NOTE 2—Where the verb requires to be followed by a preposition, the preposition is placed between the parts of the Reciprocal Pronoun.

Ils parlent mal l'un **de** l'autre.

Elles se nuisent les unes **aux** autres.

They speak ill of each other.

They injure (to) one another.

132. Qui que ce soit: Si vous y trouvez qui que ce soit.
 Je n'y ai trouvé qui que ce soit.
 Je n'y ai trouvé quoi que ce soit.
- If you find there any one at all.
 I found nobody at all there.
 I found nothing at all there.*
133. Quoi qui (que): Quoi (=quelque chose) qui vous afflige.
 Quoi que vous disiez.
- Whatever afflicts you.
 Whatever you say.*

134. On: On dit qu'il est malade.
- { One says that he is sick.
 They say he is sick.
 People say he is sick.
 It is said he is sick.*

NOTE 1—On may be written l'on after the vowel sound of *et, où, que, si*, etc., when on itself is not followed by *l*.

NOTE 2—When *on* has a clearly Feminine or Plural significance, the adjectives qualifying it must be Feminine or Plural.

Quand on est belle, on ne l'ignore pas.
When one is beautiful, one is not ignorant of the fact.

En Amérique on est égaux. *In America we are equal.*

135. Personne: Personne n'est ici.
 Qui est là? Personne.
- Nobody is here.
 Who is there? No one.*

Personne, as a pronoun, is always masculine and singular.

NOTE—In questions and statements of doubt *personne* may be used (without *ne*) = *anybody*.

- Y-a-t-il personne à la maison?
Is there anybody at home.
- { Je doute que personne y soit.
 I doubt there is anybody in.*

136. Rien: Rien ne peut l'affliger.
 Cela ne fait rien.
 Qu'a-t-il? Rien.
 Est-il rien de plus absurde?
- { Nothing can afflict him.
 That matters nothing.
 What has he? Nothing.
 Is there anything more absurd?*

Rien has a Noun use: *Il dit des riens (trifles). C'est un rien.*

137. Quelconque: Quelconque le fera, sera puni.
- Whoever does it will be punished.*

NOTE—When *quelconque* has a clearly Feminine significance, the adjective qualifying it is made Feminine.

- Mesdames, quelconque de vous sera assez hardie.
- Ladies, whoever of you will be bold enough.*

THÈME 31.

1. Qu'a-t-on fait hier soir à la réunion de la société littéraire? 2. On a beaucoup parlé sans rien dire. 3. Quel dommage! À quoi bon toutes ces réunions si l'on ne s'amuse ni ne s'instruit? 4. Il y a dans notre société trop de diseurs de riens, qui aiment à s'entendre parler, mais qui ennui tout le monde. 5. Nul n'est mécontent de son esprit. 6. Chacun écoute les discours d'autrui d'une autre oreille que les siens. 7. Mais pourquoi ne parlez-vous pas, vous? 8. Pour me venger, vous voulez dire? 9. Cela me rappelle la réponse qu'un homme a faite à quelques-uns de ses amis, qui s'étonnaient qu'il eût donné sa fille en mariage à son ennemi: C'est pour me venger, dit-il. 10. Je préfère passer le temps dans la bibliothèque. Des romans, des tableaux, des poètes; que de ressources contre l'ennui! 11. Chacun à son goût. Quelqu'une de vous, mesdemoiselles, aura la bonté de lire les phrases du thème. Les autres les traduiront. 12. Ne soyez pas si fière de votre beauté; on a

peu de temps à être belle et longtemps à ne l'être plus. 13. J'ai peur de faire cela, qu'en dira-t-on? 14. Je me moque des qu'en dira-t-on. 15. Cette maison d'école a ses défauts; mais, à tout prendre, elle est commode. 16. À l'impossible nul n'est tenu. 17. Par lequel de ces chemins irons-nous? Allons par ici. 18. Nul ne peut servir deux maîtres; car ou il haïra l'un, et aimera l'autre; ou il s'attachera à l'un et méprisera l'autre. 19. Tout ou rien, c'est ce qu'il m'a dit. 20. Que fais-tu à l'école, Marie, à quoi t'occupes-tu, ma petite? J'attends qu'on sorte. 21. Ne croyez personne sur des on dit. 22. Pardonne tout à tous et rien à toi. 23. On rit de l'homme dans La Bruyère; on le méprise dans Pascal; dans la Rochefoucauld on le fuit; dans Molière on le juge. 24. Sur la porte d'un cimetière on a mis cette inscription: "Ici on est égaux." 25. Le portier d'un sot peut toujours dire qu'il n'y a personne au logis.

EXERCISE 32.

1. Let us resume our lesson. At what page did we stop, Louis? 2. At the beginning of chapter four, page forty-five. 3. Which of the exercises? 4. The thirty-second. 5. Begin, Miss A. Everyone will translate in (à) his turn. 6. The egotist is loved by nobody, for he loves nobody. 7. What does he think of? What does he speak of? Whom does he trust (to)? Whom does he praise? 8. Everyone for himself, says he; and, sheltered under that maxim, he pities nobody, troubles everybody; gives nothing, wishes everything. 9. Whoever has helped him, has found him ungrateful. Now he mistrusts others because others mistrust him. 10. Without friends or companions, he dies, hated by all, regretted by none. 11. I know another very different character. 12. He is loved by everybody, for in the happiness of others he finds his own. 13. Each of his actions is a lesson; each word a prayer. 14. He has found that the half is sometimes greater than the whole; for he increases his happiness in sharing it with others. 15. What pains him, what afflicts him, is not his own sorrows, but those of his friends. 16. It is only to half (à demi) live, to live only for one's self, says he; and strengthened by this maxim, he asks himself every day: for whom can I do this? to whom can I give that? does not friend A. need something? is there nothing [of] consoling to say to friend B.? 17. He is content with what is necessary, envying [to] no one either (ni) his fortune or (ni) his place. 18. What could be [of] happier than such a life? 19. Now, you have seen both characters. 20. Neither is entirely unknown to you. 21. Which do you prefer, the former or the latter? 22. Everyone prefers the latter. Remember then these few lines:

La vie est un voyage,
Tâchons de l'embellir;
Jetons sur son passage
Les roses du plaisir.

COMPOSITION 33.

My Castles.

I have often wondered¹ how I should reach² my castles. In what part of Spain they are, what route one must take to reach them—to tell the truth³, I am not quite certain. I have inquired⁴ very particu-

larly, but nobody seems to know precisely. One morning I met young Aspen [who was] trembling with excitement. "What is the matter?" asked I with interest, for I knew that he held a great deal of Spanish stock.

"Oh!" said he, "I'm going out to take possession. I have found the way to my castles in Spain."

"What!" I answered, and, heedless of Prue, I pulled at my glove until it ripped^b—"what is it?"

"The direct route is through California," answered he.

"But then you [will] have the sea to cross," said I remembering the map.

"Not at all," answered Aspen, "the road runs^c along the shore of Sacramento River."

He darted away^d, and I did not meet him again. I was very curious to know if he arrived safely in Spain, and was expecting every day to hear (receive) news from him of my property there, when, one evening, I bought a newspaper, full of California news, and the first thing upon which my eye fell was this: "Died, in San Francisco, Edward Aspen, Esq., aged 35."

G. W. CURTIS.

¹ être curieux de savoir. ² Use pouvoir arriver à. ³ pour vrai dire. ⁴ s'enquérir, 109, 3. ⁵ se déchirer. Use the imp. subj. ⁶ passer. ⁷ s'éloigner à la hâte.

III. THE RELATIVE PRONOUNS (PRONOMS CONJONCTIFS ou RÉLATIFS).

138. The Relative Pronouns in French are *qui*, *que*; *ce qui*, *ce que*; *lequel*, *laquelle*, *lesquels*, *lesquelles*; *dont*; *quoi*.

139. *Qui*, *que*.—*Qui* and *que* are invariable as to person, gender, number, but assume the person, gender, number of the noun to which they refer:

Moi qui parle.	Nous qui parlons.	La femme que j'ai vue.
Toi qui parles.	Vous qui parlez.	Les femmes que j'ai vues.
Elle } qui parle.	Eux } qui parlent.	Les livres que j'ai vus, etc.
Lui } qui parle.	Elles } qui parlent.	The woman whom I have seen, etc.
I who speak, etc.	We who speak, etc.	

140. The Relative as Subject or Object of Verbs.

a. *Qui* is used as Subject.

L'homme	} qui est ici.	
La femme		
Le livre		
Les hommes	} qui sont ici.	
Les femmes		
Les livres		

b. *Que* is used as Direct Object.

L'homme	} que je vois.	
La femme		
Le livre		
Les hommes	} que je vois.	
Les femmes		
Les livres		

141. The Relative after Prepositions.

a. *Qui* is used after prepositions in reference to Persons, Personifications. *Lequel*, *laquelle*, *lesquels*, *lesquelles* may in such cases also be used.

b. *Lequel*, *laquelle*; *lesquels*, *lesquelles* alone may be used after prepositions in reference to animals and things.*

L'homme **de qui** (duquel) vous parlez.
 La femme **de qui** (de laquelle) vous parlez.
 Les hommes **de qui** (desquels) vous parlez.
 Les femmes **à qui** (auxquelles) vous parlez.
 L'homme **après** (avant, avec, etc.) **qui** (lequel) vous parlez.

Le chien **duquel** vous parlez.
 La plume **de laquelle** vous parlez.

Les livres **desquels** vous parlez.

Le livre **dans lequel** se trouve le passage.
 La plume **avec laquelle** vous écrivez.

*NOTE.—When the antecedent is an indefinite word, such as *ce*, *rien*, or a whole phrase, the relative after a preposition is **quoi** (*dont* for *de quoi*). See 144.

Ce à **quoi** je pense.
That of which I am thinking.

Vous avez blâmé mon frère, en **quoi** vous vous êtes trompé.
You blamed my brother, in which you were mistaken.

142. Lequel.—*Lequel, laquelle*, etc., are sometimes used as subject or object of a verb instead of *qui, que*, in order to avoid ambiguity.

J'ai rencontré la femme de votre oncle, **laquelle** m'a rendu un grand service.
I met your uncle's wife, who rendered me a great service.

Qui in place of 'laquelle' would refer to 'oncle,' but *laquelle* by its feminine form clearly refers to 'femme.'

143. Dont.—*Dont* is more frequently used than *de qui, duquel, de laquelle, desquels*, etc., in reference to persons or things, and means *whose, of whom, of which*. *It is never interrogative.*

L'homme **dont** (de qui, duquel) je parle.
 L'homme **dont** la table est ici.
The man whose table is here.

Les livres **dont** (desquels) je parle.
 L'homme **dont** vous avez épousé la sœur.
The man whose sister you married.

NOTE.—As *dont* cannot have before it a preposition, sentences such as the following must be rendered by *duquel, etc.*

The man whose sister you speak of. | L'homme de la sœur **duquel** vous parlez.

144. Ce qui, ce que, etc.—*Ce qui, ce que, ce dont, ce à* (*en, sur, etc.*) *quoi* are used absolutely and are equivalent to the English relatives *what* (*that which*).

Ce **qui** (*nom.*) est utile est bon.
What is useful is good.
 Ce **que** (*obj.*) je dis est vrai.
What I say is true.

J'ai tout **ce dont** j'ai besoin.
I have whatever I need.
 Ce à **quoi** je pense.
What I am thinking of.

NOTE 1—Remark the use of *que*, with *être, devenir*, etc. in such expressions as:
 Savez-vous **ce que** vous êtes ? | *Do you know what you are ?*

NOTE 2—Where the antecedent is a whole sentence *ce qui, ce que*, etc. must be used.
 (Cf. 141, note.)

Vous avez gagné votre procès, **ce qui** m'a beaucoup plu.

You gained your law-suit, which pleased me much.

NOTE 3—*Ce* may be preceded by *tout* without affecting the construction.

Tout **ce qui** est bon est utile.
All that is good is useful.

Tout **ce que** je dis est vrai.
All that I say is true.

145. Celui qui, (que), etc. The correlative pronouns referring to persons or things are :

MASC. SING. celui qui (que), *he who (whom), the one that.*

FEM. celle qui (que), *she who, the one that.*

Celui qui a fait cela est mon ami.
He who has done that is my friend.

PLUR. ceux qui (que), *they who (whom), those that.*

celles qui (que), *they who (whom), those that.*

Ma plume ? C'est celle que vous avez.
My pen ? That is it which you have.

146. Qui, que, quoi.—Qui, que and quoi are sometimes used absolutely ; qui and que with verbs, quoi as the object of a preposition.

Qui s'excuse, s'accuse.
He who excuses himself, accuses himself.
Je ne sais que faire.
I know not what to do.
Je ne sais qui chercher.
I know not whom to look for.

J'ai de quoi vivre, de quoi écrire.
I have enough to live on, to write with.
Voilà de quoi j'ai besoin.
That is what I need.
Il n'y a pas de quoi.
There is no occasion.

147. Où.—Où is used relatively, wherever possible, instead of *lequel* etc., with reference to locality or time.

La maison où je demeure.
The house in which I dwell.

L'instant où nous naissons est un pas vers la mort.
The moment in which we are born is a step towards death.

REPETITION OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

The Relative Pronoun, so frequently omitted in English, must always be expressed in French.

Here is the man $\wedge$ I saw.

| Voici l'homme que j'ai vu.

THÈME 34.

Translate. Comment on the Relative pronouns.

1. Voici des phrases que vous traduirez et des questions auxquelles vous répondrez. 2. Que la terre est petite à celui qui la voit des cieux ! 3. Donne à celui qui te demande. 4. Aimez vos ennemis ; bénissez ceux qui vous maudissent ; faites du bien à ceux qui vous haïssent. 5. Qui sert bien son pays n'a pas besoin d'aïeux. 6. Rendez à César ce qui appartient à César. 7. Le jour où Turenne remporta son premier prix au collège, il se sentit plus joyeux que le jour où il gagna sa première bataille. 8. Il n'y a pas de quoi rire ; il y a de quoi pleurer. 9. J'aime ceux qui rougissent plus que ceux qui pâlisent. 10. Que faire d'une journée de pluie ? 11. S'il faut agir, je ne sais que faire ; s'il faut parler, je ne sais que dire. 12. Il est heureux qui croit l'être. 13. Celui-là est heureux qui a un cœur pur. 14. Qui aime le danger y périra. 15. Quelqu'un demandait à un philosophe l'âge du monde ; il traça sur le sable un serpent qui se mordait la queue. 16. C'est une condition à laquelle je ne puis renoncer, sans laquelle je ne consentirai à rien. 17. Dans le fond de la boîte de Pandore, d'où sortirent tous les maux, il ne resta plus que l'espérance. 18. Qui ne dit mot, consent. 19. C'était à qui parlerait. 20. L'homme dont je vous ai parlé est celui que vous voyez là. 21. O rochers escarpés, à qui je me plains. 22. Ils étaient dispersés qui ça, qui là. 23. Il y a une édition de ce livre là. 24. Il n'y a pas de quoi me remercier.

25. La vie de certains hommes est une comédie dont on n'applaudit que la scène qui la termine. 26. Le Régent par ordre duquel Voltaire était à la Bastille fut si content d'un des drames de ce dernier qu'il lui rendit la liberté. 27. Voltaire remercia le prince, qui lui dit: "Soyez sage et j'aurai soin de vous." 28. "Je suis infiniment obligé," répondit l'auteur, "mais je supplie Votre Altesse de ne plus se charger ni de mon logement ni de ma nourriture."

EXERCISE 35.

1. Have you ever thought of what a school is? 2. It is comfortable (*faire bien*) here, in the school-house in which we are (find ourselves). 3. There are seats upon which we can sit down. 4. There are desks upon which we can write. 5. On the walls there are black-boards, which aid us in our work. 6. In the corner, maps which teach you geography. 7. Then there is the library in which are contained the books that interest you and instruct you. 8. Outside, there is a play-ground in which you have your games. 9. Near the school is the gymnasium where you take exercise. 10. You have teachers who scold you, perhaps, but who love you, and who encourage you in all that is good. 11. And why all that for you who have done nothing? 12. It is not you who have built this school. 13. It is not you who have furnished all that we desire. 14. Who has done all that, built the school, permitted you to come here, provided you the masters who teach you, given you all you need? 15. It is your town, your county, your country that has done all this for you. 16. It is your country that protects and aids you, that wishes to make of you good boys and good girls. 17. For what she has done for you, do you not owe her gratitude and love? 18. It is by labor that you will show best the gratitude that you must feel for (of) all that she has done. 19. Those who strive to instruct themselves are the ones that will do honor to the country that has done so much for them.

COMPOSITION 36.

A sailor had gone ashore¹ on the southern coast of America with (in) the intention of carrying to a town at some distance from the coast a bundle of red woollen caps which he wished to sell. He had to² pass through a forest in which were seen a great many monkeys [that were] climbing on the trees. Worn out by³ the heat of the mid-day sun he rested under a tree whose great branches completely sheltered him from its burning rays, opened the bundle he was carrying, took from it a woollen cap, which he put on his head, and fell asleep⁴. When he awoke he found that all the caps his bundle had contained had disappeared. "Bless me!"⁵ he cried, astonished at what had happened. But raising his eyes he saw that the trees around were alive with⁶ troops of monkeys, each of whom was wearing a red woollen cap! What was to be done? He shouted, he tried to⁷ frighten the monkeys, who laughed at⁸ all his efforts. At last finding his efforts vain to get back⁹ his caps, the sailor took off the one he had put on his head and threw it on the ground⁹ with disgust, exclaiming, "There, you¹⁰ little thieves, if you wish to keep them all, take this one too." Scarcely had he said that, when¹¹ the monkeys, who were watching him, did exactly what he had done. Each one of them snatched the cap off his head and

threw it to the ground. You can imagine the joy of the sailor at regaining all the caps, which he carried-off in triumph.

¹débarquer. ²il lui fallut. ³abattu par. ⁴s'endormir. ⁵mon Dieu. ⁶animé de. ⁷de. ⁸pour ravoir. ⁹à terre. ¹⁰151, Note 3. ¹¹When 'after à peine, un jour, etc. is que.

VI. THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS (PRONOMS PERSONNELS).

148. The Personal Pronouns have two forms, the **Conjunctive** and the **Disjunctive**.

The Conjunctive Forms are :

SINGULAR.

1ST PERSON.	2ND PERSON.	3RD PERSON.
NOM. je, I.	tu, thou.	il, he, it; elle, she, it.
DAT. me, to me.	te, to thee.	lui = to him, to her; y, to it (inanimate object).
ACCUS. me, me.	te, thee.	le, him, it; la, her.
		Reflective se, himself, herself, itself, one's self.

PLURAL.

NOM. nous, we.	vous, you.	ils (m.), elles (f.), they.
DAT. nous, to us.	vous, you.	leur, to them; y, to them (of things).
ACCUS. nous, us.	vous, to you.	les, them.
		Reflective: se, themselves.

En, of it, of them, some, any, is best used with reference only to things and animals.

These conjunctive forms are employed when the pronoun is closely connected (conjoined) with the verb either as subject or as object (without preposition).

149. *The Disjunctive Forms are :*

SINGULAR.

1ST PERSON.	2ND PERSON.	3RD PERSON.
moi, I, me.	toi, thou, thee.	lui, he, him, it; elle, she, her, it.
		Reflective: soi.
PLURAL.		
nous, we, us.	vous, you.	eux (m.), elles (f.) they, them.

The Disjunctive forms are employed when the noun is not closely joined with (is disjoined from) the verb, or is governed by a preposition.

150. *Conjunctive :*

Subject or Object of a verb expressed.

Je l'ai fait.

I have done it.

Tu m'as frappé.

Thou has struck me.

Il l'a fait.

He has done it.

Tu l'as frappée.

Thou hast struck her.

Je vous parle.

I speak to you.

Je lui parle.

I speak to her.

151. *Disjunctive :*

(a) Verb understood.

Qui a fait cela?

Who did that?

Qui avez-vous frappé?

Whom did you strike?

Moi.

I.

Toi.

Thee.

Lui.

He.

Elle.

Her.

(b) As a Predicate.

C'est moi; c'est elle; c'est nous, etc.

It is I; it is she; it is we, etc.

(c) After a Preposition.

Je parle à vous et à elle.

I speak to you and to her.

Je vais.

I go.

Voici le

Here is

J'ai un l

I have a

parler

I have

Y *faite

Are you

Y pense

Are you

Allez-vo

Are you

*NOTE

ne n'y f

†NOTE

s in the

Lui-mên

He hims

NOTE 2

nominat

Lève-toi.

152.

(a) C

Je me lo

tu te lou

il (elle) e

On se l

Le chien

(b) D

je parle

tu parle

il parle

elle par

153. f

the sent

1. W

cun, c

monde

Chacun

Each we

2. Wh

U

A

3. Wh

L

T

e sailor at

imé de. ^{7de.}
etc. is que.

s).

ctive and

imate object).

, itself, one's

things).

and animals.

is closely
ject (with-

, her, it.

them.

not closely
reposition.

oi. Lui.

Je.

oi. Elle.

hee. Her.

nous, etc.

re, etc.

on.

Je vais. Elle va. Ils vont.
I go. She goes. They go.

Voici le livre ; j'en parle.
Here is the book ; I speak of it.

J'ai un livre, vous en avez deux ; nous en
parlerons.

I have a book, you have two ; we shall
speak of them.

Y *faites-vous attention ?
Are you paying attention to it ?

Y pensez-vous ?
Are you thinking of (to) it ?

Allez-vous à Paris ? J'y vais.
Are you going to Paris ? I am going there.

Je vais avec lui, sans elle, sans eux.
I go with him, without her, without them.

Je parle de lui, d'elle.
I speak of him, of her.

Je parle d'eux.
I speak of them (of persons).

(d) In a Compound Subject.

Elle et moi (nous) irons.
She and I shall go.

(e) To express Emphasis.†

Lui a chanté, eux ont joué.
He sang, they played.

Moi, je vous dis qu'il a tort.
I tell you he is wrong.

*NOTE 1.—Y may refer to persons with *se fier, trust* : Voyez-vous cet homme, je
ne m'y fie pas.

†NOTE 2.—The emphasis may be strengthened by the addition of *même*, which takes
s in the plural.

Lui-même m'a dit cela.
He himself told me that.

Ils m'ont dit cela eux-mêmes.
They told me that themselves.

NOTE 3.—The Personal pronoun in French is not used as in English to emphasize a
nominative of address.

Lève-toi, paresseux !

Rise, you Lazy-bones !

152. The Reflective Pronoun :

(a) Conjunctive,—

Je me loue, I praise myself, etc.
tu te loues,
il (elle) se loue,

nous nous louons,
vous vous louez,
il (elles) se louent.

On se loue ; chacun se loue ; tout le monde se loue, etc.

Le chien se mord. The dog bites himself. | Le temps s'écoule. Time passes away.

(b) Disjunctive,—

je parle de moi (-même),
tu parles de toi (-même),
il parle de lui (-même),
elle parle d'elle (-même),

nous parlons de nous (-mêmes),
vous parlez de vous (-mêmes),
ils parlent d'eux (-mêmes),
elles parlent d'elles (-mêmes).

153. *Soi*.—It will be noticed that *soi* is not used disjunctively in the 3rd person in
the sentences above. *Soi* is not used with reference to persons except :

1. When the subject of the sentence is an indefinite or general term, such as *au-
cun, chacun, nul, on, personne, quelqu'un, quiconque, tout le
monde, tout homme, celui qui*, etc.

Chacun travaille pour soi.
Each works for himself.

Il faut prendre garde à soi.
One must take care of one's self.

2. When *lui* would be ambiguous.

Un fils qui travaille pour son père travaille pour soi.
A son who works for his father works for himself.

3. When *lui, elle*, etc. would be feeble.

L'égoïste ne pense qu'à soi.
The egotist thinks only of himself.

Soi is employed disjunctively with reference to Things in the singular.

La vertu est aimable de soi,
Virtue is amiable in itself.

Cela est bon en soi,
That is good in itself.

USE OF TU, VOUS, NOUS.

154. *Tu* is applied to a child, to a very intimate friend, to a member of our family, to God. It may have also a contemptuous force.

In place of *tu*, **vous** is employed in addressing one person for respect, politeness.

Nous is likewise sometimes used for *je*, *moi*. (Cf. the editor's *we*.) When *nous* and *vous* are used with the force of a singular, the adjectives that qualify them must be singular.

LE, LA, LES, EN IN SUBSTITUTIONS.

155. *Le, la, les, en.*—By means of the pronouns *le, la, les, en, y*, which may sometimes be substituted for preceding words, many abbreviations can be effected in French. *a.* As a representative predicate with reference to a determinate noun, *le, la, les* (variable) must be employed. *b.* In place of an adjective, a clause, or an indeterminate noun, *le* (invariable) must be used. *c.* In place of a partitive noun, *en* is employed.

a. Êtes-vous la maîtresse ici ? Je la suis.

Êtes-vous les malades (the patients) ? Nous les sommes.

b. Êtes-vous maîtresse ici ? Je le suis.

Êtes-vous malades ? Nous le sommes.

Privé comme vous l'êtes des secours.. Deprived as you are [deprived] of the aid..

c. Avez-vous des livres ? Nous en avons de très beaux.

Compare :

Est-ce là votre plume ?

Is that your pen ?

Sont-ce là vos plumes ?

Are those your pens ?

Oui, ce l'est. (Or better: *C'est ma plume.*)

Yes, it is.

Oui, ce les sont. (Or better: *ce sont mes plumes.*)

Yes, they are.

Referring to Persons with a verb in the 3rd pers., *lui, elle, eux, elles* are to be preferred to *le, la, les*.

Est-ce là votre frère ? C'est lui.

Is that your brother ? It is.

Est-ce là votre mère ? C'est elle.

Is that your mother ? It is

This is the case likewise when a complement follows.

Est-ce là votre plume ?

Is that your pen ?

Oui, c'est elle que vous avez à la main.

Yes, that is it which you have in your hand.

Such abbreviations as: *Have you done that ? I have* are not permissible in French.

Avez-vous fait cela ?

Oui. (Or the full sentence: *Oui, je l'ai fait.*)

ORDER OF WORDS AS TO PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

156. General Rule.—Personal Pronouns, used as Direct or Indirect Objects of the verb, are placed before the verb governing them in the order: (1) First or Second Person; (2) Third Person (Direct preceding the Indirect); (3) *y*; (4) *en*.

The application of this rule will be better seen in the following table,—where the relative place of the négative is likewise shown :

NEG.	OBJ. 1ST OR 2ND P.	OBJ. OF 3RD. P.		Y, EN.	AUX. VERB.	NEG.	Past Part.
		Direct.	Indir.				
ne	me te nous vous Also: se	le la les	lui leur	Y, en		pas point jamais rien	

ASSERTIVE : Affirmative,—

Mon père m'en a parlé.
My father has spoken to me of it.
 Nous leur y en avons envoyé.
We have sent some to them there.

INTERROGATIVE : Affirmative,—

Mon père m'en a-t-il parlé ?
 Leur y en avons-nous envoyé ?
Have we sent any of them there ?

IMPERATIVE : Negative,—

Ne m'en parlez pas.
Do not speak to me of it.
 Ne leur y en envoyons jamais.
Let us never send any to them there.

Negative,—

Mon père ne m'en a pas parlé.
My father has not spoken to me of it.
 Nous ne leur y en avons pas envoyé.
We have sent none to them there.

Negative,—

Mon père ne m'en a-t-il pas parlé ?
 Ne leur y en avons-nous jamais envoyé ?
Have we never sent any of them there ?

Affirmative, 3rd person,—

Qu'il nous en parle.
Let him speak to us of it.
 Qu'ils les lui donnent.
Let them give them to her (him).

157. Exceptions :

1. When the Personal Pronouns are the objects of an Imperative Affirmative verb, in the 2nd person or 1st person plural, they follow the verb in the order (1) Direct, (2) Indirect, (3) y, en ; and me and te become moi, toi, except before en and y.

Donnez-moi le livre.
Give me the book.

Donnez-le-moi.
Give it to me.

Donnez-m'en.
Give me some.

Donnez-les-moi.
Give me them.

Parlons-leur-en.
Let us speak to them of it.

Donnons-leur.
Let us give them to them.

NOTE—This rule, however, is too absolute and must be modified.

a. The following construction is admissible : *Polissez-le sans cesse et le repolissez.*

b. *M'y* is not used after the verb. *Ty* is used only in a few expressions. (*Jetle-t'y, mette-t'y*, etc.). Instead of saying, for example : *Attends-t'y*, say : *Attends-toi à cela.*

c. *Nous* and *vous* are, according to usage, placed before *le*.

Si le diner est prêt, servez-nous-le,
If dinner is ready, serve it to us.

Tenez-vous-le pour dit que....
Be assured that....

2. When there are two direct or two indirect objects, both follow the verb :

Il voit vous et votre frère.
He sees you and your brother.

Mon père parle à vous et à elle.
My father speaks to you and to her.

3. When *se* or a pronoun of the 1st or 2nd person is the direct object, the indirect object referring to a person follows the verb :

Il s'adresse à eux.
He applies to them.

Il me présente à vous.
He introduces me to you.

Il vous recommande à nous.
He recommends you to us.

4. When modified by *ne...que*, only, but, the pronouns follow :

Il ne parle qu' à moi.
He speaks only to me.

Il n'a que moi non plus.
He has none but me, either.

5. When the pronoun is emphatic :

Je le donne à vous, à vous, mon cher ami.
I give it to you, to you, dear friend.

6. After certain verbs and verbal phrases, the pronouns referring to persons follow :

a. Verbs :

Aller, go.—*Je vais à lui.*
 Accourir, hasten.—*Nous sommes accourus à eux.*
 Attirer, attract.—*L'aimant (loadstone) attire le fer à soi.*
 Courir, run.—*Nous courons à vous.*
 Boire, drink.—*Il boit à nous.*
 Être, belong.—*Cette plume est à moi.*
 Penser (singer), think.—*Il pense toujours à vous.*
 Appeler (rappeler), call, recall.—*Dieu l'a appelé à lui.*
 Venir, come.—*Il vint à moi.*
 Revenir, return.—*Il revint à nous.*

But in a Figurative Sense :

Cet habit ne lui va pas.
That coat does not fit him.
 Cela lui a attiré bien des reproches.
That has brought on him many reproaches.
 Je me le rappelle.
I remember it.
 La raison lui viendra avec l'âge.
L'opinion commence à lui revenir.

b. Verbal Phrases :

Faire attention, pay attention.—*Faites attention à nous.*
 Prendre intérêt, take an interest.—*Il prend intérêt à moi.*
 " garde, take heed.—*On prend garde à soi.*
 Avoir rapport, égard, recours, etc.

158. With *aller, venir, vouloir, falloir, pouvoir, envoyer*, followed by an infinitive governing a personal pronoun, there is often an optional position for the pronoun before the principal verb.

Nous irons les voir ; nous les irons voir. Il vient me voir ; il me vient voir.

159. With *faire, laisser* and a following infinitive, the object must be treated as the object of the finite verb.

Je le lui fais faire. *I make (to) him do it.* Faites-le-moi savoir. *Send me word.*
 Je les ai laissé punir, *I have allowed them to be punished.*

(But, with the reflexive verb : Elle semble les laisser se mouvoir, etc.)

REPETITION OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

160. Pronouns as Subjects.—Successive verbs without conjunctions, referring to the same subject, may have the subject repeated or not before each verb. The repetition adds energy ; the omission gives vivacity. This the case likewise with verbs connected by *et, on, mais, ni*. Other conjunctions require the repetition of the subject.

J'estime, (je) respecte, (j')honore ces hommes.
 Je plie mais (je) ne romps pas.

Je les estime parce que je les connais.
 Je ne romps pas car je suis fer.

NOTE.—In passing from a negative to an affirmative the pronoun must be repeated : Je ne romps pas mais je plie.

161. Pronouns as Objects.—The Personal Pronoun object must be repeated with every verb that governs it. The repetition is not made when only the perfect participle is employed.

Nous les avons loués, (nous) les avons respectés, etc.

Nous les avons loués, respectés, aimés.

NOTE.—Remark the pleonastic use of *le* in inversions such as :

Ce que vous m'avez dit, je ne le crois pas.
What you told me, I do not believe.

THÈME 37.

1. Êtes-vous Canadiennes, mesdemoiselles ? 2. Nous le sommes, monsieur. 3. Mais vous n'aimez pas le Canada ? 4. Si fait, et nous en

sommes bien fières. Ses grands fleuves, ses beaux lacs, ses magnifiques paysages, nous les admirons et nous les aimons. 5. Et ses jeunes hommes ? Vous ne pensez pas à eux. 6. Cela s'entend. 7. Vous êtes de vraies patriotes, j'en suis sûr, et j'aime à vous entendre parler ainsi. 8. Faut-il aimer la patrie plus que soi ? 9. Écoutez ce que disait Fénélon : J'aime ma famille plus que moi-même, mon pays plus que ma famille, et l'humanité plus que mon pays. 10. Celui-là est bien malheureux qui ne pense qu'à soi. 11. Vous avez préparé les phrases que je vous ai dit d'apprendre ; récitez-les-moi. 12. Celui qui ne vit que pour soi est déjà mort. 13. Les avarés sont bien malheureux ; ils ne voient dans le monde qu'eux et que leurs trésors. 14. L'égoïste l'est aussi ; parlez-lui des antipodes et il vous répondra en parlant de soi. 15. La vanité est une idole à laquelle nous sacrifions tout et nous-mêmes. 16. Chacun se dit ami ; mais fou qui s'y repose. 17. Il est plus aisé d'être sage pour les autres que de l'être pour soi-même. 18. Il faut prendre garde à soi. 19. Cette femme est belle et le sera longtemps. 20. Messieurs, êtes-vous les invités ? 21. Nous les sommes. 22. La poésie porte son excuse avec soi. 23. Cueillez cet œillet et attachez-vous-le à votre boutonnière. 24. Quand vous aurez des nouvelles, faites-les-moi savoir. 25.

Hâtez-vous lentement, et, sans perdre courage,
Vingt fois sur le métier remettez votre ouvrage ;
Polissez-le sans cesse et le repolissez ;
Ajoutez quelquefois et souvent effacez.

EXERCISE 38.

1. Two intimate friends were speaking one day of a misfortune that had happened them because (*à cause*) of their negligence. 2. How foolish we were, to-be-sure (*donc*, placed before the pred. adj.) ! said one. 3. Speak in (*à*) the singular, said the other. 4. Well, how foolish you were, to be sure ! 5. A celebrated lawyer was pleading. The judge, to give himself more importance, interrupts him two or three times to criticise his arguments. 6. At last the orator out-of-patience (*impatience*) becomes-silent (*se taire*, irreg.), rolls-up his papers, and prepares to go-out. 7. It seems to me, Mr.* Lebrun, said the judge, that you wish to show your contempt of the court. 8. To show it ! exclaimed the lawyer. No, no, quite on the contrary ! I strive to (*de*) conceal it. 9. One day a letter arrives by (*à*) the Paris post with this address : To the greatest poet of France. 10. The postman carried it to M. Victor Hugo. 11. The latter would not accept it ; take it, said he, to M. de Lamartine. 12. Lamartine refused it also and addressed it to M. Alfred de Musset. 13. The latter had it returned (159) to Victor Hugo, who at last accepted it. 14. King George I., travelling once to Hanover, stopped at a little village of Holland to change horses. 15. Being hungry he asked-for two or three eggs, which he ate in his carriage. 16. When he was going away, a servant told [to] his majesty that the inn-keeper had charged him two hundred florins. 17. The king had him come. 18. How is (*se faire*) it, sir, that you charge me two hundred florins for three eggs ? Are they so scarce here ? 18. No, replied the host, eggs are abundant enough, but kings are excessively rare. 19. I admire Mr. B. ; I love, honor, and respect him, said a friend of mine the other day. 20. I think of him and have recourse to him in

all my difficulties; but he has one fault. 21. Although he speaks much, one would listen to him with pleasure, except for (*si ce n'était*) the habit he has contracted of unbuttoning your waistcoat in chatting, which is not without inconvenience during the winter.

**Me (maitre)*, title given in France to barristers and notaries.

COMPOSITION 39.

Absence of Mind.

1. *Anecdote of Newton*.—Newton, being one day deeply engaged in the solution of some difficult problem, would not leave it to go and dine with his family. His housekeeper, however, sent one of the servants into his room, with a sauce-pan to boil¹ him an egg. Newton, wishing to be alone, sent her away, saying that he would boil it himself. The servant put the egg on the table beside² his watch, told him to let it boil three minutes, and went away. A few minutes after she returned, and found Newton with the egg in his hand [and] cooking his watch in the saucepan, without the least notion of the mistake he had committed.

2. *Anecdote of Ampère*.—One day Ampère, a celebrated French mathematician, was on his way³ to his lectures⁴. He finds on the road a pebble, which he picks up and whose party-colored⁵ veins he begins to examine curiously. Suddenly the lectures he is to⁶ give recurs⁷ to his mind; he pulls out his watch. Remarking⁸ that the hour is drawing-near⁹, he hastens his steps¹⁰, carefully puts-back the pebble into his pocket, and throws his watch over the parapet of the Pont des Arts.

At the Polytechnic School, when he had completed a demonstration on the board, he hardly ever (almost never) failed to wipe-away the figures with his silk-handkerchief¹¹ and to put-back into his pocket the traditional duster¹².

¹*faire bouillir*. ²*à côté de*. ³*se rendre*. ⁴*cours m. s.* ⁵*bigarré*. ⁶*devoir*. ⁷*revenir*. ⁸*s'apercevoir*. ⁹*s'approcher*. ¹⁰*presser le pas*. ¹¹*foulard*. ¹²*Use here torchon*.

V. THE VERB (DU VERBE).

I. THE CONJUGATIONS (DES CONJUGAISONS).

162. Verbs in French are usually divided into four main classes or conjugations, in accordance with the *termination of the Infinitive*:

I. In *er*, as *parler*; II. in *ir*, as *finir*; III. in *oir*, as *recevoir*; IV. in *re*, as *rompre*.

163. The First Conjugation contains by far the largest number of verbs—nineteenths of all the verbs—and to it are added whatever new verbs are created; e. g. *télégraphier*.

New verbs from adjectives have been made according to the Second Conjugation (cf. *bleuir*, *rougir*), sufficient to regard the Second Conjugation and the First as the *living conjugations*.

164. With reference to the formation of the Past Definite and Past Participle, a distinction may be made between verbs as being *Weak* or *Strong*; the former having the tonic accent (the chief stress of the voice) on a termination, the latter on the root.

Weak: Aimer, *P. def.* aimai.
P. Part. aimé.

Strong: tenir, *P. def.* tins; venir, *P. def.* vins.
joindre, *P. Part.* joint; prendre, *P. Part.* pris.

165.
minat
the rel

pa

166.

two kil
parlon
called
and of

167.

the ver
perfec

(1)

P

168.

may dec
the cor
the regu

(1)

Rule

to the In

Future

tions of

INFINITIVE

pa

finir

rece

rom

*Oï an

Rule

obtained

ation of

je p

Rule

of the a

J'ai

Rule

Sing. I

conjug

3rd Pers

tu j

Gen

ticipl

fect

of the

These

other p

II. ROOT AND TERMINATIONS (RADICAL ET TERMINAISONS).

165. Root and Terminations.—The verb is composed of a **Root** and a **Termination**, the root giving the fundamental significance of the verb, the termination the relations of person, number, time, etc. to that notion.

parl er, (to) speak; *parl ais, was speaking*; *parl ai, spoke*; *parl ons, let us speak, etc.*

166. Terminations, Strong and Weak.—The terminations of the verb are of two kinds: (1) Terminations that are sounded, which are called *Strong*; as, nous parlons, je partis, j'ai vaincu; (2) Terminations that are not sounded, which are called *Weak*, consisting of (a) *Consonantal* terminations; as, je bats, tu pars, il vient; and of (b) *Mute e* terminations; as je parle, ils parlent, ils parleront.

167. The Root.—The root of the verb is found in its purest form in five places in the verb: (1) the **Present Participle**, (2) the **Pres. Indic. Plural**, (3) the **Imperfect Indic.**, (4) the **Present Subj.**, (5) the **Imperative Plural**.

(1) parl ant, (2) nous parl ons, etc., (3) je parl ais, etc., (4) que je parl e, (5) parl ons, etc.

III. THE FORMATION OF TENSES (FORMATION DES TEMPS).

168. Rule 1.—As the root does not vary in the above mentioned tenses (167), we may deduce the rule, that if we have, let us say, the **Present Participle**, any of the corresponding parts, mentioned above, may be obtained by adding to the root the regular terminations of the various parts.

(1) *Pres. Part. écrivant*, (2) *Pres. Ind. Pl. nous écrivons*, (3) *Imp. Ind. j'écrivais*, (4) *Pres. Subj. que j'écrive*, (5) *Imperat. Pl. écrivons*.

Rule 2.—From the Infinitive two tenses are formed: (1) the **Future** by adding to the Infinitive the old **Present Indic. of avoir**, *ai, as, a, ons, ez, ont*; (2) the **Future Imperfect (Conditional)**, by adding to the Infinitive the **terminations of the Imperfect Indic. of avoir**, *-ais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient*.

INFINITIVE:

parler,
finir,
recevoir,
rompre.

(1) *Future*:

je parler ai,
tu finir as,
il recev^r* a,
nous rompr^r* ons, etc.

(2) *Imp. Fut. (Conditional)*:

je parler ais,
tu finir ais,
il recev^r* ait,
nous rompr^r* ions, etc.

**Oi* and *e* are suppressed.

Rule 3.—From the **Past Definite** the **Imperf. Subjunctive** may always be obtained by adding *-sse, -sses, -t, -ssions, -ssiez, -ssent* to the first vowel of the termination of the verb in the **Past Definite**.

je parla i,—que je parla sse. tu reç^u s,—que tu reç^u sses.

Rule 4.—The compound tenses are formed from the **Past Participle** by the aid of the auxiliary verb *avoir* or (sometimes) *être*.

j'ai parlé; tu eus reç^u; il aura rompu; je suis venu; je fus venu.

Rule 5. The forms of the **Present Indic. 2nd Sing.** differ from the **2nd Sing. Imperative** by the presence in the former of the pronoun, and, in the first conjugation, of a terminal *s*. The so-called **3rd Pers. Imperative** is nothing but the **3rd Pers. of the Pres. Subjunctive**.

tu parles, parle; tu finis, finis; tu reç^{ois}, reç^{ois}; tu romps, romps.

General Rule.—Given the five forms: (1) the **Present Participle**; (2) the **Infinitive**; (3) the **Past Definite**; (4) the **Perfect Participle**; (5) the **Indic. Pres. 2nd Sing.**, all other parts of the regular, and of most irregular, verbs may be obtained.

These five parts have been, though wrongly, termed **Primitive Tenses**, and the other parts **Derivative Tenses**.

IV. THE REGULAR CONJUGATIONS.

169. CONJUGAISON DU VERBE AUXILIAIRE AVOIR (TO) HAVE.

INDICATIF.	SUBJONCTIF.	IMPÉRATIF.
PRÉSENT. <i>I have, etc.</i> j' ai, nous avons, tu as, vous avez, il a, ils ont.	PRÉSENT ou FUTUR. <i>that I (may) have, etc.</i> que j' aie, que n. ayons, que tu aies, que v. ayez, qu'il ait, qu'ils aient.	PRÉSENT ou FUTUR. — aie, <i>have (thou),</i> ait, <i>let him have,</i> ayons, <i>let us have,</i> ayez, <i>have (ye, you),</i> qu'ils aient, <i>let them have.</i>
PASSÉ INDÉFINI. <i>I have had, etc.</i> j' ai eu, nous avons eu, tu as eu, vous avez eu, il a eu, ils ont eu.	PASSÉ. <i>that I (may) have had, etc.</i> que j' aie eu, que n. ayons eu, que tu aies eu, que v. ayez eu, qu'il ait eu, qu'ils aient eu.	—
IMPARFAIT. <i>I had, was having, etc.</i> j' avais, nous avions, tu avais, vous aviez, il avait, ils avaient.	—	INFINITIF. PRÉSENT. avoir, (to) have.
PLUS-QUE-PARFAIT. <i>I had had, etc.</i> j' avais eu, n. avions eu, tu avais eu, v. aviez eu, il avait eu, ils avaient eu.	—	PASSÉ. avoir eu, (to) have had.
PASSÉ DÉFINI. <i>I had, etc.</i> j' eus, nous eûmes, tu eus, vous eûtes, il eut, ils eurent.	IMPARFAIT. <i>that I might have, etc.</i> que j' eusse, que n. eussions, que tu eusses, que v. eussiez, qu'il eût, qu'ils eussent.	PARTICIPE. PRÉSENT. ayant, having.
PASSÉ ANTÉRIEUR. <i>I had had, etc.</i> j' eus eu, n. eûmes eu, tu eus eu, v. eûtes eu, il eut eu, ils eurent eu.	PLUS-QUE-PARFAIT. <i>that I might have had, etc.</i> q. j' eusse eu, q. n. eussions eu, q. tu eusses eu, q. v. eussiez eu, qu'il eût eu, qu'ils eussent eu.	PASSÉ. ayant eu, <i>having had,</i> eu, <i>had.</i>
FUTUR. <i>I shall have, etc.</i> j' aurai, nous aurons, tu auras, vous aurez, il aura, ils auront.	FUTUR IMPARFAIT. (PRÉSENT DU CONDITIONNEL.) <i>I should have, etc.</i> j' aurais, nous aurions, tu aurais, vous auriez, il aurait, ils auraient.	—
FUTUR ANTÉRIEUR. <i>I shall have had, etc.</i> j' aurai eu, nous aurons eu, tu auras eu, vous aurez eu, il aura eu, ils auront eu.	FUTUR PLUS-QUE-PARFAIT. (PASSÉ DU CONDITIONNEL.) <i>I should have had, etc.</i> (1st Form.) (2nd Form.) j' aurais eu, j' eusse eu, tu aurais eu, tu eusses eu, il aurait eu, il eût eu, n. aurions eu, n. eussions eu, v. auriez eu, v. eussiez eu, ils auraient eu, ils eussent eu.	—

170. CONJUGAISON DU VERBE AUXILIAIRE ÊTRE (TO) BE.

INDICATIF.

PRÉSENT.

I am, etc.

je suis, nous sommes.
tu es, vous êtes,
il est, ils sont.

PASSÉ INDÉFINI.

I have been, I was, etc.

j' ai été, n. avons été,
tu as été, v. avez été,
il a été, ils ont été.

IMPARFAIT.

I was, used to be, etc.

j' étais, nous étions,
tu étais, vous étiez,
il était, ils étaient.

PLUS-QUE-PARFAIT.

I had been, etc.

j' avais été, nous avions été,
tu avais été, vous aviez été,
il avait été, ils avaient été.

PASSÉ DÉFINI.

I was, etc.

je fus, nous fûmes,
tu fus, vous fûtes,
il fut, ils furent.

PASSÉ ANTÉRIEUR.

I had been, etc.

j' eus été, n. eûmes été,
tu eus été, v. eûtes été,
il eut été, ils eurent été.

FUTUR.

I shall be, etc.

je serai, nous serons,
tu seras, vous serez,
il sera, ils seront.

FUTUR ANTÉRIEUR.

I shall have been, etc.

j' aurai été,
tu auras été,
il aura été,
nous aurons été,
vous aurez été,
ils auront été.

SUBJONCTIF.

PRÉSENT ou FUTUR.

that I (may) be, etc.

que je sois, que nous soyons,
que tu sois, que vous soyez,
qu'il soit, qu'ils soient.

PASSÉ.

that I (may) have been, etc.

q. j' aie été, q. n. ayons été,
q. tu aies été, q. v. ayez été,
qu'il ait été, qu'ils aient été.

IMPARFAIT.

that I might be, etc.

q. je fusse, q. n. fussions,
q. tu fusses, q. v. fussiez,
qu'il fût, qu'ils fussent.

PLUS-QUE-PARFAIT.

that I might have been, etc.

q. j' eusse été, q. n. eussions été,
q. tu eusses été, q. v. eussiez été,
qu'il eût été, qu'ils eussent été.

FUTUR IMPARFAIT.

(PRÉSENT DU CONDITIONNEL.)

I should be, etc.

je serais, nous serions,
tu serais, vous seriez,
il serait, ils seraient.

FUTUR PLUS-QUE-PARFAIT.

(PASSÉ DU CONDITIONNEL.)

I should have been, etc.
(1st Form). (2nd Form).

j' aurais été, j' eusse été
tu aurais été, tu eusses été,
il aurait été, il eût été,
nous aurions été, nous eussions été,
vous auriez été, vous eussiez été,
ils auraient été, ils eussent été.

IMPÉRATIF.

PRÉSENT ou FUTUR.

sois, be (thou),
qu'il soit, let him be,
soyons, let us be,
soyez, (be ye, you),
qu'ils soient, let them be.

INFINITIF.

PRÉSENT.

être, (to) be.

PASSÉ.

avoir été, (to) have been.

PARTICIPE.

PRÉSENT.

étant, being.

PASSÉ.

ayant été, having been,
été, been.

171. PREMIÈRE CONJUGAISON*, EN -*er*: VERBE MODÈLE, *Parler*, (TO) *SPEAK*.

INDICATIF.	SUBJONCTIF.	IMPÉRATIF.
PRÉSENT.	PRÉSENT ou FUTUR.	PRÉSENT ou FUTUR.
<i>I speak, etc.</i>	<i>that I (may) speak, etc.</i>	parle, <i>speak</i>
je parle, nous parlons, tu parles, vous parlez, il parle, ils parlent.	que je parle, que n. parlions, que tu parles, que v. parliez, qu'il parle, qu'ils parlent.	qu'il parle, <i>let him speak,</i>
PASSÉ INDÉFINI.	PASSÉ.	parlons, <i>let us speak,</i>
<i>I have spoken, I spoke, etc.</i>	<i>that I may have spoken, etc.</i>	parlez, <i>speak</i>
j' ai parlé, n. avons parlé, tu as parlé, v. avez parlé, il a parlé, ils ont parlé.	q. j' aie parlé, q. n. ayons parlé, q. tu aies parlé, q. v. ayez parlé, qu'il ait parlé, q. v. aient parlé.	qu'ils parlent, <i>let them speak.</i>
IMPARFAIT.		INFINITIF.
<i>I was speaking, used to speak.</i>		PRÉSENT
je parlais, nous parlions, tu parlais, vous parliez, il parlait, ils parlaient.		parler, (to) <i>speak.</i>
PLUS-QUE-PARFAIT.		PASSÉ.
<i>I had spoken, etc.</i>		avoir parlé, <i>to have spoken.</i>
j' avais parlé, n. avions parlé, tu avais parlé, v. aviez parlé, il avait parlé, ils avaient parlé.		PARTICIPE.
PASSÉ DÉFINI.	IMPARFAIT.	PRÉSENT.
<i>I spoke, etc.</i>	<i>that I spoke, might speak, etc.</i>	parlant, <i>speaking.</i>
je parlai, nous parlâmes, tu parlâs, vous parlâtes, il parla, ils parlèrent.	q. je parlasse, q. n. parlâssions, q. tu parlâsses, q. v. parlâssiez, qu'il parlât, qu'ils parlâssent.	PASSÉ.
PASSÉ ANTÉRIEUR.	PLUS-QUE-PARFAIT.	ayant parlé, <i>having spoken.</i>
<i>I had spoken, etc.</i>	<i>that I had (might have) spoken, etc.</i>	parlé, <i>spoken.</i>
j' eus parlé, n. eûmes parlé, tu eus parlé, v. eûtes parlé, il eut parlé, ils eurent parlé.	q. j' eusse parlé, q. n. eussions parlé, q. tu eusses parlé, q. n. eussiez parlé, qu'il eût parlé, qu'ils eussent parlé.	FUTUR IMPARFAIT.
FUTUR.	(PRÉSENT DU CONDITIONNEL.)	<i>I should speak, etc.</i>
<i>I shall speak, etc.</i>	je parlerais, nous parlerions, tu parlerais, vous parleriez, il parlerait, ils parleraient.	FUTUR PLUS-QUE-PARFAIT.
je parlerai, n. parlerons, tu parleras, v. parlerez, il parlera, ils parleront.	(PASSÉ DU CONDITIONNEL.)	<i>I should have spoken, etc.</i>
FUTUR ANTÉRIEUR.	(1st Form.)	(2nd Form.)
<i>I shall have spoken, etc.</i>	j' aurais parlé, tu aurais parlé, il aurait parlé, nous aurions parlé, vous auriez parlé, ils auraient parlé.	j' eusse parlé, tu eusses parlé, il eût parlé, nous eussions parlé, vous eussiez parlé, ils eussent parlé.

*See 175 for some peculiarities in the conjugation of certain verbs in -*er*.

172. DEUXIÈME CONJUGAISON, EN IR : VERBE MODÈLE, Finir, (TO) FINISH.

(TO) SPEAK.

IMPÉRATIF.

PRESENT ou FUTUR.

parle, *speaking*
 tu finis, *thou*
 parle, *let him*
 parlons, *let us*
 parlez, *speaking*
 (ye, you), *speaking*
 parlent, *let them*
speaking

INFINITIF.

PRESENT
(to) speak.

PASSÉ.
 parlé, *to have*
spoken

PARTICIPE.

PRESENT
speaking.

PASSÉ.
 parlé, *having*
spoken

INDICATIF.

PRÉSENT.

I finish, etc.
 je finis, nous finissons,
 tu finis, vous finissez,
 il finit, ils finissent.

PASSÉ INDÉFINI.

I have finished, I finished.
 j' ai fini, nous avons fini,
 tu as fini, vous avez fini,
 il a fini, ils ont fini.

IMPARFAIT.

I was finishing, etc.
 je finissais, nous finissions,
 tu finissais, vous finissiez,
 il finissait, ils finissaient.

PLUS-QUE-PARFAIT.

I had finished, etc.
 j' avais fini, n. avions fini,
 tu avais fini, v. aviez fini,
 il avait fini, ils avaient fini.

PASSÉ DÉFINI.

I finished, etc.
 je finis, nous finîmes,
 tu finis, vous finîtes,
 il finit, ils finirent.

PASSÉ ANTÉRIEUR.

I had finished, etc.
 j' eus fini, nous eûmes fini,
 tu eus fini, vous eûtes fini,
 il eut fini, ils eurent fini.

FUTUR.

I shall finish, etc.
 je finirai, nous finirons,
 tu finiras, vous finirez,
 il finira, ils finiront.

FUTUR ANTÉRIEUR.

I shall have finished, etc.
 j' aurai fini,
 tu auras fini,
 il aura fini,
 nous aurons fini,
 vous aurez fini,
 ils auront fini.

SUBJONCTIF.

PRESENT ou FUTUR.

that I (may) finish, etc.
 que je finisse, que nous finissions,
 que tu finisses, que vous finissiez,
 qu'il finisse, qu'ils finissent.

PASSÉ.

that I (may) have finished, etc.
 que j' aie fini, que n. ayons fini,
 que tu aies fini, que v. ayez fini,
 qu'il ait fini, qu'ils aient fini.

IMPARFAIT.

that I finished (might finish).
 que je finisse, que nous finissions,
 que tu finisses, que vous finissiez,
 qu'il finit, qu'ils finissent.

PLUS-QUE-PARFAIT.

that I had (might have) finished.
 que j' eusse fini, q. n. eussions fini,
 que tu eusses fini, q. v. eussiez fini,
 qu'il eût fini, qu'ils eussent fini.

FUTUR IMPARFAIT.

(PRÉSENT DU CONDITIONNEL.)

I should finish, etc.
 je finirais, nous finirions,
 tu finirais, vous finiriez,
 il finirait, ils finiraient.

FUTUR PLUS-QUE-PARFAIT.

(PASSÉ DU CONDITIONNEL.)

I should have finished.
 (1st Form.) (2nd Form.)
 j' aurais fini, j' eusse fini,
 tu aurais fini, tu eusses fini,
 il aurait fini, il eût fini,
 nous aurions fini, nous eussions fini,
 vous auriez fini, vous eussiez fini,
 ils auraient fini, ils eussent fini.

IMPÉRATIF.

PRESENT ou FUTUR.

finis, *finish*
 (thou),
 qu'il finisse, *let him*
finish,
 finissons, *let us*
finish,
 finissez, *finish*
 (ye, you),
 qu'ils finissent, *let them*
finish.

INFINITIF.

PRESENT.

finir, (to) finish.

PASSÉ.

avoir fini, *to have*
finished.

PARTICIPE

PRÉSENT.

finissant, *finishing*.

PASSÉ.

ayant fini, *having*
finished,
fini, *finished*.

173. TROISIÈME CONJUGAISON, EN -OIR: VERBE MODÈLE, **Recevoir**, (TO) **RECEIVE**.**INDICATIF.****PRÉSENT.***I receive, etc.*

je reçois*, nous recevons,
tu reçois, vous recevez,
il reçoit, ils reçoivent.

PASSÉ INDÉFINI.*I have received, etc.*

j' ai reçu, nous avons reçu,
tu as reçu, vous avez reçu,
il a reçu, ils ont reçu.

IMPARFAIT.*I was receiving, etc.*

je recevais, nous recevions,
tu recevais, vous receviez,
il recevait, ils recevaient.

PLUS-QUE-PARFAIT.*I had received, etc.*

j' avais reçu, n. avions reçu,
tu avais reçu, v. aviez reçu,
il avait reçu, ils avaient reçu.

PASSÉ DÉFINI.*I received, etc.*

je reçus, nous reçûmes,
tu reçus, vous reçûtes,
il reçut, ils reçurent.

PASSÉ ANTÉRIEUR.*I had received, etc.*

j' eus reçu, n. eûmes reçu,
tu eus reçu, v. eûtes reçu,
il eut reçu, ils eurent reçu.

FUTUR.*I shall receive, etc.*

je recevrai, n. recevrons,
tu recevras, v. recevrez,
il recevra, ils recevront.

FUTUR ANTÉRIEUR.*I shall have received, etc.*

j' aurai reçu,
tu auras reçu,
il aura reçu,
nous aurons reçu,
vous aurez reçu,
ils auront reçu.

SUBJONCTIF.**PRÉSENT OU FUTUR.***that I (may) receive, etc.*

que je reçoive, que n. recevions,
que tu reçoives, que v. receviez,
qu'il reçoive, qu'ils reçoivent.

PASSÉ.*that I (may) have received, etc.*

que j' aie reçu, q. n. ayons reçu,
que tu aies reçu, q. v. ayez reçu,
qu'il ait reçu, qu'ils aient reçu.

IMPARFAIT.*that I received (might receive).*

que je reçusse, q. n. reçussions,
que tu reçusses, q. v. reçussiez,
qu'il reçût, qu'ils reçussent.

PLUS-QUE-PARFAIT.*that I might have received, etc.*

q. j' eusse reçu, q. n. eussions reçu,
q. tu eusses reçu, q. v. eussiez reçu,
qu'il eût reçu, qu'ils eussent reçu.

FUTUR IMPARFAIT.**(PRÉSENT DU CONDITIONNEL.)***I should receive, etc.*

je recevrais, nous recevriions,
tu recevrais, vous recevriez,
il recevrait, ils recevraient.

FUTUR PLUS-QUE-PARFAIT.**(PASSÉ DU CONDITIONNEL.)***I should have received, etc.***(1st Form.) (2nd Form.)**

j' aurais reçu, j' eusse reçu,
tu aurais reçu, tu eusses reçu,
il aurait reçu, il eût reçu,
nous aurions reçu, nous eussions reçu,
vous auriez reçu, vous eussiez reçu,
ils auraient reçu, ils eussent reçu.

IMPÉRATIF.**PRÉSENT OU FUTUR.**

reçois, *receive*,
qu'il reçoive, *let him receive*,
recevons, *let us receive*,
recevez *receive*,
qu'ils reçoivent, *let them receive*.

INFINITIF.**PRÉSENT.**

recevoir, (to) receive.

PASSÉ.

avoir reçu, (to) have received.

PARTICIPE.**PRÉSENT.**

recevant, receiving.

PASSÉ.

ayant reçu, having received, received.

* For the rule governing the use of the cedilla (ç), consult 175, 1.

(TO) RECEIVE.

174. QUATRIÈME CONJUGAISON, EN -RE : VERBE MODÈLE Rompre, (TO) BREAK.

ÉRATIF.

NT OU FUTUR.

—
 égols, receive,
 égolve, let him
 receive,
 oeavons, let us
 receive,
 cevez receive,
 égolvent, let
 them receive,

INITIF.

RÉSSENT.

(to) receive.

PASSÉ.

—
 u, (to) have
 received.

TICIEPE.

ÉSSENT.

receiving.

PASSÉ.

—
 u, having
 received,
 received.

INDICATIF.

PRÉSENT.

I break (am breaking), etc.

je romps, nous rompons,
 tu romps, vous rompez,
 il rompt, ils rompent.

PASSÉ INDÉFINI.

I have broken, I broke, etc.

je ai rompu, n. avons rompu,
 tu as rompu, v. avez rompu,
 il a rompu, ils ont rompu.

IMPARFAIT.

I was breaking (used to break).

je rompais, n. romplons,
 tu rompais, v. rompiez,
 il rompait, ils rompaient.

PLUS-QUE-PARFAIT.

I had broken, etc.

j' avais rompu, n. avions rompu,
 tu avais rompu, v. aviez rompu,
 il avait rompu, ils avaient rompu.

PASSÉ DÉFINI.

I broke, etc.

je rompis, nous rompîmes,
 tu rompis, vous rompîtes,
 il rompit, ils rompirent.

PASSÉ ANTÉRIEUR.

I had broken, etc.

j'eus rompu, etc.

FUTUR.

I shall break, etc.

je romprai, n. romprons,
 tu rompras, v. romprez,
 il rompra, ils rompront.

FUTUR ANTÉRIEUR.

I shall have broken, etc.

j'aurai rompu, etc.

SUBJONCTIF.

PRÉSENT OU FUTUR.

that I (may) break, etc.

que je rompe, que n. romptions,
 que tu rompes, que v. rompiez,
 qu'il rompe, qu'ils rompent.

PASSÉ.

that I (may) have broken, etc.

q.j' aie rompu, q.n. ayons rompu,
 q.tu aies rompu, q.v. ayez rompu,
 qu'il ait rompu, qu'ils aient rompu.

IMPARFAIT.

that I broke (might break), etc.

q.j.e rompisse, q.n. rompiissions,
 q.tu rompiesses, q.v. rompiissiez,
 qu'il rompit, qu'ils rompiissent.

PLUS-QUE-PARFAIT.

that I might have broken, etc.

que j'eusse rompu, etc.

FUTUR IMPARFAIT.

(PRÉSENT DU CONDITIONNEL.)

I should break, etc.

je romprais, nous romprions,
 tu romprais, vous rompiez,
 il romprait, ils rompraient.

FUTUR PLUS-QUE-PARFAIT.

(PASSÉ DU CONDITIONNEL.)

I should have broken, etc.

(1st Form.) (2nd Form.)

j'aurais rompu, j'eusse rompu,
 etc. etc.

IMPÉRATIF.

PRÉSENT OU FUTUR.

—
 romps, break
 (thou),
 qu'il rompe, let him
 break,
 rompons, let us
 break,
 rompez, break
 (ye, you),
 qu'ils rompent, let
 them break.

INFINITIF.

PRÉSENT.

rompre, (to) break.

PASSÉ.

avoir rompu, to have broken.

PARTICIEPE.

PRÉSENT.

rompant, breaking.

PASSÉ.

ayant rompu, having
 broken,
 rompu, broken.

*The final *t*, as in *il (elle, on) rompt*, is dropped after a *d*: *as, vendre, to sell—il vend.*

PECULIARITIES OF SOME VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

175. Some verbs of the First Conjugation undergo in their conjugation certain phonetic and orthographical changes. Similar changes may be noticed in the nouns and adjectives. See 12; 13; 58,1; 59, 2, etc.

1. **Verbs in -cer, -ger.**—The letters *c, g* in French are soft before *e, i*, (*cent, cinq; gens, gilet*) but hard before *a, o, u*, (*carte, comte, curé; garde, gorge, contre*). Verbs ending in *-cer, -ger*, having consequently the soft sound of *c* and *g*, must, in order to preserve the soft sound, be written *ç* and *ge* whenever they occur before *a, o*. Verbs of the Third Conjugation having *e* soft in the root preserve the soft sound of *c* before *a, o, u*, by the use of the cedilla.

avancer: j'avance, nous avançons, j'avancais, j'avancai, avançons.

juger: je juge, nous jugeons, je jugeais, je jugeai, jugeons.

recevoir: je reçois, je reçus, j'ai reçu, que je reçoive, que je reçusse.

2. **Verbs with *e* mute in the last syllable of the root.**—The laws of French pronunciation do not admit of the close sequence of two mute syllables. Consequently those verbs which have *e* mute in the last syllable of the root, when an *e* mute follows, change the sound of *e* mute in the root in *e grave*, which change is indicated (a) by the doubling of the doubling of the intermediate consonant, or (b) by the use of the grave accent over *e*.

a. **Verbs in -eler, -eter**, double the consonant before *e* mute terminations.

appeler: j'appelle, tu appelles, ils appellent, j'appellerai. (But: nous appelons, etc.)

jeter: je jette, il jette, elles jettent, elle jettera. (But: je jetais, etc.)

EXCEPTIONS.—The following verbs in *-eler, -eter* follow *b* in taking the grave accent:

<i>bourreler, torment.</i>	<i>dégeler, thaw.</i>	<i>peler, peel.</i>	<i>décolleter, bare the neck.</i>
<i>celer, conceal.</i>	<i>geler, freeze.</i>	<i>acheter, buy.</i>	<i>épousseter, dust.</i>
<i>congeler, congeal.</i>	<i>harceler, harass.</i>	<i>racheter, redeem.</i>	<i>étiqueter, label.</i>
<i>déceler, disclose.</i>	<i>modeler, model.</i>	<i>becqueter, peck.</i>	

b. **Verbs other than those in -eler, -eter**, with *e* mute in the fine syllable of the root, take the grave accent before *e* mute terminations.

mener: je mène, ils mènent, je mènerai, je mènerais, que je mène.

3. **Verbs having *é* in the last syllable of the root.**—Verbs with *é* in the last syllable of the root change *é* into *è* before mute terminations, except, however, in the Future and Future Imperf. (Conditional).

protéger: je protège, ils protègent, qu'il protège. But: je protégerai, je protégerais.

4. **Verbs ending in *y* in the root.**—Verbs ending in *y* in the root (except those in *-ey*, which always remain unchanged, and those in *-ay*, which generally remain unchanged), change *y* into *i* before mute syllables.

employer: j'emploie, tu emploies, ils emploient, j'emploierai, j'emploierais.

But *payer*: je paye, tu payes, il paye (paie), je payerai (paierai, paierai).

EXERCICE 40.*

The following verbs are in the Infinitive; the pronouns are given in full. The pupil will correct.

1. **INDIC. prés.** Nous causer et vous jouer, pendant que Henri danser et les enfants chanter. 2. **P. indéf.** Je enseigner; mes frères étudier; vous flâner; elle travailler. 3. **Imparf.** Vous chanter pendant que je jouer; mon frère chanter aussi, pendant que vous jouer. 4. **Plus-que-p.** Nous chercher: les hommes trouver; tu refuser le livre que nous accepter. 5. **Passé déf.** Mon père admirer la maison; ma mère la condamner; nous louer la maison; vous la refuser. 6. **Passé ant.** Vous économiser; elle travailler à la ville ses enfants gaspiller leur argent;

* The verbs in the six exercises 40-45 will be the same, and in the same order, in the French as in the English exercises.

je gagner l'argent. 7. *Fut.* Nous copier les lettres ; vous les plier ; les enfants donner à Henri, qui les porter à la poste. 8. *Fut. unt.* Mon oncle demander la lettre ; les enfants le oublier ; Henri la leur donner et nous le remercier. 9. *Fut. imp.* Je dis que tu pardonner au garçon, que nous le blâmer, que sa sœur le louer, et que sa mère le aimer. 10. *Fut. plus-que-p.* Il me pardonner ; vous me louer ; mon père me blâmer et ma sœur me aimer, si j'avais fait cela. 11. *IMPÉRATIF.* Louer Dieu, mon enfant ; aimer Dieu, mes enfants : que tout le monde louer Dieu ; que mes frères aimer Dieu. 12. *SUBJONCTIF. Prés.* Je veux que tu danser, qu'elle travailler, que nous causer, qu'on commencer sur-le-champ. 13. *Passé.* Avant que vous confesser, que nous avouer, qu'elle supplier, que nous menacer. 14. *Imparf.* J'ordonnai que Louise rester à la maison, qu'elle chercher la balle ; que tu ne lui parler pas ; que Jeanne et Marthe copier quelques phrases du thème. 15. *INFINITIF. Passé.* Après pleurer et après arroser la terre de leurs larmes, ils s'éloignèrent. 16. *PARTICIPE. Prés.* En marcher, en chanter, en étudier, on se fatigue.

EXERCISE 41.

1. While the girls chat and the boys play, we are dancing and you are singing. 2. The master has taught ; you have studied ; we have lounged ; our brothers have worked. 3. Our friends were singing ; we were playing ; you used-to-sing and your mother used-to-play. 4. I had sought, but you had found ; they had refused, but we had accepted. 5. We admired the singer, but they condemned her ; our friends praised her but she refused their praises. 6. She had economised, but her brothers had worked ; her children had squandered the money that you had gained. 7. I shall copy the letter ; thou wilt fold it ; Mary will give it to the children, who will take it to the post. 8. He will have asked for the money ; they will have forgotten it ; we shall have given it to him, and he will have thanked us. 9. I said that he would forgive me, that you would blame me, that my father would praise me, and that all my friends would love me. 10. You would have pardoned us but your father would have praised us ; we should have blamed them, people would have loved them, if they had done that. 11. Praise the school, my child ; love your masters ; let them praise your progress ; let us love our work. 12. I wish you to (that you, etc.) think, I wish you to work ; I do not wish you to talk, I wish you to begin your work at once. 13. Before the boys have confessed the fault, before the girls have acknowledged it, before we have entreated, and you have threatened. 14. I ordered him to stay (that he should stay, etc.), you to look-for the books, John and Henry to speak to me of your progress, everybody to copy the exercises. 15. After having (246) wept for the loss of our friend and watered the earth with our tears, we went off.

Indicate the nature of the peculiarities in the conjugation of the following verbs, and tell the tenses and persons that have these peculiarities (See 175.): *céder, promener, annoncer, appuyer, feuilleter, répter, atteler, peler, essayer.*

EXERCISE 42.

The verbs are in the Infinitive ; the pronouns are given in full. The pupil will correct.

1. *INDIC. Prés.* Nous obéir à nos parents ; vous désobéir aux vôtres ; les parents les punir. 2. *Passé indéf.* Les élèves finir leurs thèmes ; nous

les choisir ; vous accomplir votre promesse. 3. *Imparf.* Vous envahir la pays ; je franchir la rivière ; les femmes gémir. 4. *Plus-que-p.* Le soldat trahir son pays ; on le saisir ; nous le punir. 5. *Passé déf.* Je rougir ; vous pâlir ; les autres frémir. 6. *Passé ant.* Nous bâtir une maison ; vous la embellir ; le propriétaire la démolir. 7. *Fut.* Tu polir les couteaux ; Marie pétrir la pâte ; nous choisir les fleurs. 8. *Fut. ant.* Ils réussir ; nos amis établir ; tu accomplir. 9. *Fut. imparf.* Je croyais que vous nourrir les pauvres, que nous guérir les malades, que Dieu bannir le vice. 10. *Fut. plus-que-p.* Les médecins guérir le malade, ils le chérir, quand même personne ne les en applaudir. 11. *IMPÉRATIF.* Bénir Dieu, mon enfant ; que tout le monde le bénir ; chérir la vertu, mes chers frères. 12. *SUBJ. Prés.* Croyez-vous que les arbres reverdir, grossir, grandir. 13. *Passé.* Quoique nous abolir cette loi, que nous adoucir la punition. 14. *Imparf.* Avant que vous rebâtir votre maison et que votre père la garnir. 15. *Plus-que-p.* Il fallut que je finir mon thème avant que vous finir le vôtre. 16. *PARTICIPE.* En bâtir des châteaux en Espagne on jouit de spectacles divertir.

EXERCISE 43.

1. I obey my father ; when John disobeys his, we punish him. 2. I have finished the exercise which you chose ; I have fulfilled my promise. 3. We were invading the country, while they were crossing the frontier ; everybody was lamenting. 4. The traitors had betrayed our troops ; we had seized them ; you had punished them. 5. The girl blushed when you turned pale, but we shuddered. 6. You had built a house ; the upholsterer had embellished it ; we had torn it down. 7. They will polish the mirrors (*glace f.*) ; we shall knead the dough ; Mary will choose the guests. 8. We shall have succeeded in our enterprise ; for you will have established communications between the towns, and thus you will have accomplished your design. 9. I believed that we should feed the poor, that you would cure the sick, that God would banish vice. 10. He would have cured him ; we should have cherished him, even though no one would have applauded us for (of) it. 11. Let us bless God ; let people bless Him ; cherish, my child, thy mother. 12. Do you believe that the tree is growing green again, that it is growing big and tall ? 13. Though they have abolished those severe laws, though we have softened all punishments. 14. Before they rebuilt their country-house, and before we furnished ours. 15. It was necessary for us to have finished our exercise before they had finished theirs. 16. In building castles in the air, diverting pastime, the hours steal away.

EXERCISE 44.

The verbs are in the Infinitive ; the pronouns are given in full. The pupil will correct.

1. *INDIC. OF Prés.* Ils apercevoir ; vous attendre ; le bateau descendre. 2. *Passé indéf.* Le professeur recevoir la bourse que les étudiants perdre ; il la leur rendre. 3. *Imparf.* Ils devoir répondre à la lettre ; vous attendre une réponse ; le roi en défendre l'usage. 4. *Plus-que-p.* Nous concevoir ; vous défendre le pays ; tu vendre. 5. *Passé déf.* Ils percevoir l'intérêt ; vous défendre nos droits ; leurs ennemis ne entendre pas leur justification. 6. *Passé ant.* Jean vous décevoir ; nous ne répondre pas

aux
dre
gran
Fut.
10.
devo
atter
Prés
pas,
imp
14.
deac
qu'i
tu r

1.
dow
give
wait
how
We
they
had
had
ceiv
lose
shall
9. Y
10.
to h
to-m
sary
but
lette
the
hang
migh
that
back

17
is on
subj
* T
to mu
J'ai d
I mus

aux lettres ; ils *perdre* nos plumes. 7. *Fut.* Je *apercevoir* ; nous *descendre* ; Charles *perdre* son argent. 8. *Fut. ant.* Elle *recevoir* un télégramme ; elle *descendre* la rivière ; nous ne *perdre* pas notre temps. 9. *Fut. imparf.* Je *devoir** le faire ; vous *devoir* y aller ; nous *devoir* revenir. 10. *Fut. plus-que-p.* Mon frère *devoir* écrire ; je *devoir* répondre ; vous *devoir* revenir. 11. IMPÉRATIF. *Recevoir* l'argent, si vous voulez ; attendre un peu, mes amis ; qu'ils *rompre* la convention. 12. SUBJ. *Prés.* Il faut que vous *concevoir* le projet ; qu'elle ne vous *interrompre* pas, nos amis le *attendre*. 13. *Passé.* Quoique nous *percevoir* les impôts, qu'ils *répondre* à mon appel, que mon frère *vendre* les terres. 14. *Imparf.* Ne croyez-vous pas qu'elles *apercevoir* le filon, que nous *descendre* la montagne, que nous le *pendre*. 15. Pour que vous *recevoir*, qu'il *rendre* l'argent, que ma sœur le *perdre*. 16. *Plus-que-p.* Pour que tu *recevoir* de l'argent, que tu n'en *rendre*, que j'en *perdre*.

EXERCISE 45.

1. We perceive the steamer which we are waiting-for ; it is coming-down the river. 2. We have received the money John lost ; we have given it back to him. 3. We were-to answer the letters ; they were waiting-for our answers ; but our father forbade it. 4. I have conceived how he defended the country. They have sold their lives dear. 5. We collected the interest of their money ; we defended their rights ; they did not hear our justification. 6. We had deceived you, for they had not answered your letter ; I had lost their pen. 7. We shall perceive the steeple of the village where we [shall] alight. There we shall lose your company. 8. We shall have received their telegrams ; we shall have gone-down the river ; our friends will have lost no time. 9. You ought-to go ; we ought to do it ; our friends ought to return. 10. They ought* to have gone ; you ought to have done it ; they ought to have returned. 11. Let him still-owe the money ; let them wait till to-morrow ; but let us break our agreement. 12. They must (it is necessary that they) conceive a great project, you must not interrupt them, but wait-for them. 13. Though he has collected the money, answered the letters, and sold the estates. 14. Do you not believe that we perceived the rogue, that he came down the mountain, and that the peasants hanged him ? 15. In order that we might receive the letter, that you might give it back to John, and that he might lose it. 16. In order that John might have received the letter, that we might have given it back to Mary, and that she might have lost it.

V. INTERROGATIVE VERBS (VERBES INTERROGATIFS).

176 Rule. A statement may be made interrogative, (a) if the subject is one of the personal pronouns *je, tu, il, etc.*, or *on, or ce*, by placing the subject after the verb, or, in compound tenses, after the auxiliary ; (b)

* The verb *devoir* in the perfect tense, followed by the simple infinitive, corresponds to *must, ought* in the simple tense, followed by a perfect infinitive.

J'ai dû le faire.

I must have-done it.

J'aurais dû le faire.

I ought to have-done it.

if the subject is a noun or a pronoun, other than those just mentioned, by placing a corresponding pronoun after the verb (or auxiliary).

- | | |
|---|--|
| a. <i>Parlé*</i> . je à l'homme ?
A-t- <i>il</i> parlé à l'homme ?
Avait- <i>il</i> parlé à l'homme ? | b. L'homme parle-t- <i>il</i> ?
Quelqu'un a-t- <i>il</i> parlé ?
Cela est- <i>il</i> correct ? |
|---|--|

* When the verb in the first person ends in *e* mute, the *e* becomes *é* before *je*.

Dussé-je mourir. Eussé-je chanté ?

** When the verb in the third person ends in a vowel, *t* must be inserted before the vowel of *il*, *elle*, *on* : *Partira-t-*il** ?

† The *passé antérieur* is not employed in questions.

177. Limitations. (a) When the verb in the 1st person indic. has but one syllable, *je* must never be placed after the verb (except in *ai-je*, *suis-je*, *puis-je*, *sais-je*, *vais-je*, *dois-je*, *vois-je*). With such verbs the statement is made interrogative by prefixing the phrase *est-ce que*.

b. When the interrogative statement is introduced by *où*, *combien*, *quel*, *que*, *quand*, etc., the subject may stand after verb (or past participle), provided the verb is not followed by an object or an adverb, and is not in a compound tense.

- | | |
|---|--|
| a. <i>Est-ce que*</i> je vends le drap ?
Do I sell the cloth ?
<i>Est-ce que</i> je le rends ?
Do I give it back ? | b. Où est votre frère ?
Where is your brother ?
Quand viendront les troupes ?
When will the troops come ? |
|---|--|

* The interrogation with *est-ce que* is to be preferred, except in formal language, in interrogations with the 1st person, but may be used with all persons. It often expresses doubt or surprise.

VI. NEGATIVE VERBS (VERBES NÉGATIFS).

Simple Tenses.	Compound Tenses.	Interrogative.	
je ne parle pas.	je n'ai pas reçu.	ne finis-je pas ?	n'ai-je pas fini ?
je ne parlais pas.	je n'avais pas reçu.	ne finirai-je pas ?	n'aurai-je pas fini ?

178. The negative *ne* is always placed before the verb, preceding any pronoun objects that the verb may have.

Je ne vois pas.
Ne le lui ai-je pas donné ?

Je ne le lui ai pas donné.
Est-ce que je ne lui parle pas ?

179. The negatives *pas*, *point*, *jamaïs*, *guère*, *rien*, *plus*, follow the verb, or in a compound tense, the auxiliary.

Je ne l'ai jamais vu.
I have never seen him.

Ce mot n'est guère usité que dans cette phrase.
That word is but little used except in that sentence.

180. When the verb is in the Infinitive, the negatives *pas*, *point*, *jamaïs*, *rien* are usually, though not necessarily, placed immediately after *ne*.

J'ai l'intention de **ne pas** en parler.
I intend not to speak of it.
 Il dit **ne rien** avoir entendu.
He says he has heard nothing.
 Veuillez n'en rien dire à personne.
Be so kind as to say nothing of it to anybody.

Je souhaite **ne jamais** te voir.
I wish never to see thee.
 Je serais coupable de **ne pas** m'y prêter.
I should be blameworthy not to comply with it.

VII. PASSIVE VERBS (VERBES PASSIFS).

181. The conjugation of the Passive Verb offers no difficulty, as it is simply the tenses of the verb *être* (170), followed by the perfect participle of the verb to be conjugated.

The past participle after the verb *être* must agree in all passive verbs with the subject.

ÊTRE LOUÉ or LOUÉE, LOUÉS, LOUÉES, (to) be praised.

Prés.: je suis loué or louée,
 tu es loué or louée,
 { il est loué,
 { elle est louée, etc.

Passé indéf.: nous avons été loués or louées,
 vous avez été loués, or louées,
 { ils ont été loués,
 { elles ont été louées, etc.

182. The prepositions used after the passive voice before the agent are **de** and **par**. **De** is to be preferred when the past participle has a vague, general, or habitual sense. *Cet homme est respecté de tous.* Accompagné (précédé, suivi) **de** ses gardes, le roi partit.

Par is to be preferred when the action is definite, special, relative to a determined object. *Hamlet, par Shakespeare.* Elle fut aimée **par** un jeune homme riche, qui finit **par** l'épouser. (Larousse.)

183. Limitations to the use of the Passive Voice. The French make use of the passive voice to a much less extent than the English. Generally speaking, the passive voice in French is used only when the agent is expressed; in other cases the active voice with *on* or the reflective verb (136) is more in harmony with the spirit of the language, and will be found more frequently employed.

Compare :

I have been told that.
That is easily done.
I have been forbidden to go out.
That book is easily sold.

On m'a dit cela.
Cela se fait facilement.
On m'a défendu de sortir.
Ce livre se vend facilement.

184. Generally speaking, a verb that governs an indirect object in the Active Voice cannot, in French, have such indirect object made the subject in the Passive.

The letter has been answered.
They were given paper and pens.

On a répondu à la lettre.
On leur donna du papier et des plumes.

185. The Active infinitive is used, where in English we find the Passive, in the following cases:—

a. Infinitive used adjectively:—*C'est un homme à craindre: He is a man to be feared.*

With verbs governing the indirect object this form must not be used: *C'est un homme à qui on peut se fier: He is a man to be trusted.*

b. Infinitive after *laisser, faire, etc.* :

Je l'ai laissé* punir.
J'ai fait* bâtir la maison.

*I allowed him to be punished.
I have caused the house to be built.
or, I have had the house built.*

*The Infinitive construction with these verbs is as if we understood *quelqu'un* (somebody) : I have allowed (had) *somebody* to punish him.

VIII. REFLECTIVE VERBS (VERBES PRONOMINAUX ou RÉFLÉCHIS).

186. The Reflective Verb offers little difficulty other than the use of the auxiliary *être* in all the compound tenses in French ; while English usage requires the auxiliary *have*. The past participle agrees with the pronoun object, unless such pronoun is clearly *indirect*.

SE REPENTIR, repent :	Simple Tense.	Compound Tense.
	Je me repens,	Nous nous sommes repentis or repenties,
	Tu te repens,	Vous vous êtes repentis or repenties,
	Il se repent,	Ils se sont repentis,
	Elle se repent, etc.	Elles se sont repenties, etc.
	I repent, etc.	We have repented, etc.

187. The use of the Reflective conjugation has extended to all cases where the object of the verb is a person, etc., identical with the subject.

Je me suis fait mal au doigt.
I have hurt my (to myself) the finger.

Cette femme s'est cassé le bras.
That woman has broken her (to herself) the arm.

So also :

Je m'en suis allé(e).
I have gone away.

Je me suis écrié(e).
I have exclaimed.

Je me suis enfui(e), etc.
I have fled away, etc.

IX. THE AUXILIARIES OF INTRANSITIVE VERBS (AUXILIAIRES DES VERBES INTRANSITIFS).

188. A great number of French intransitive verbs take *avoir* as their auxiliary.

J'ai couru ; tu **as** marché ; il **a** dormi ; nous **avons** régné ; vous **avez** vécu, etc.

189. Intransitive Verbs taking *être* as their auxiliary. Some intransitive verbs, however, always take *être*, although their English equivalents require *have*. The past participle of such verbs must agree with the subject in gender and number.

aller, <i>go.</i>	éclore, <i>blow (of flowers),</i>	devenir, <i>become.</i>
arriver, <i>arrive.</i>	hatch (of birds).	disconvenir, <i>deny.</i>
choir, <i>fall.</i>	entrer, <i>enter.</i>	intervenir, <i>intervene.</i>
décéder, <i>die.</i>	mourir, <i>die.</i>	parvenir, <i>attain.</i>
échoir, <i>fall due.</i>	naître, <i>be born.</i>	provenir, <i>proceed (from).</i>
tomber, <i>fall.</i>	venir, <i>come.</i>	revenir, <i>return.</i>

Also: **convenir**, with the meaning *acknowledge, agree* : Nous **sommes** convenus du prix. It takes *avoir* when meaning *please, suit* : Ce projet ne lui **a** pas convenu.

In the compound tenses of these verbs we must consequently say : Je **suis** allé (e) ; tu **es** arrivé ; elle **est** morte ; nous **sommes** venu(e)s, etc.

190. Verbs taking *avoir* or *être*, according to the sense. A

certain number of intransitive verbs take **avoir** when they express *Action*, and **être** when they express *State*. They are :

accourir, <i>run to.</i>	demeurer, <i>dwell, stay.</i>	*monter, <i>ascend.</i>
accroître, <i>increase.</i>	*descendre, <i>descend.</i>	partir, <i>depart, leave.</i>
apparaître, <i>appear.</i>	disparaître, <i>disappear.</i>	*passer, <i>pass.</i>
*cesser, <i>cease.</i>	embellir, <i>become more beautiful.</i>	rester, <i>stay.</i>
*changer, <i>change.</i>	empirer, <i>grow worse.</i>	*sortir, <i>go out.</i>
croître, <i>grow.</i>	grandir, <i>grow taller.</i>	vieillir, <i>grow old.</i>
décroître, <i>decrease.</i>		

* Used also transitively, when like other transitive verbs they take *avoir*: Il a descendu (brought down) mes gants. Nous l'avons passé en chemin, etc.

Action—Auxiliary avoir.

La fièvre a cessé à quatre heures.
The fever ceased at four o'clock.
 Cet enfant a bien grandi en peu de temps.
That child has grown much in a short time.
 Le fusil a parti tout d'un coup.
The gun went off suddenly.
 Ma sœur a sorti plusieurs fois.
My sister has gone out several times.

State—Auxiliary être.

La fièvre est cessée depuis longtemps.
The fever has long ceased.
 Vous êtes maintenant bien grandi.
You are now well grown.
 Mon frère est parti pour Montréal.
My brother has set out for Montreal.
 Ma sœur est sortie.
My sister is out.

X. IMPERSONAL VERBS (VERBES IMPERSONNELS ou UNIPERSONNELS).

191. Certain verbs in French, as in English, are used only in the *third person singular*. These verbs in French almost always have *il* as their subject; the *Past Participle* is *invariable*. They have otherwise no special mode of conjugation.

éclairer, <i>lighten.</i>	dégeler, <i>freeze.</i>	neiger, <i>snow.</i>	tonner, <i>thunder.</i>
geler, <i>freeze.</i>	grêler, <i>hail.</i>	pleuvoir, <i>rain.</i>	falloir*, <i>be necessary, must, have to.</i>
il éclaire;	il gélait,	il dégela,	il grêlera,
il a neigé,	il aurait plu,	il eut tonné,	il aura fallu, etc.

* NOTE—The constructions with *falloir* are of four kinds.

- Absolute :** Il faut faire cela. *That must be done.*
- With a noun, or a pronoun, as indirect object.
 Il faut à cet homme des sommes considérables d'argent. *That man needs, etc.*
 Il me faut un bon dictionnaire français. *I want a good French dictionary.*
- With a dative personal pronoun and an Infinitive.
 Il me faut y aller. *I must go there.*
- With a noun or pronoun as the subject of a dependent verb in the subjunctive
 Il a fallu que mon père quittât Paris. *My father had to leave Paris.*
 Il faut que je fasse ce que vous faites. *I must do what you do.*

S'en falloir, to lack: Il s'en est peu fallu qu'il n'ait été tué. *He was nearly (there lacked little, etc.) being killed.*

192. In special phrases or with special meanings, many verbs not necessarily impersonal become for the time impersonal.

arriver, <i>happen.</i>	soir, <i>be fitting.</i>	faire froid, <i>be cold.</i>	faire de la boue, <i>be muddy.</i>
advenir, <i>happen.</i>	tomber, <i>fall.</i>	" frais, <i>be cool.</i>	" jour, <i>be daylight.</i>
convenir, <i>suit.</i>	importer, <i>matter.</i>	" obscur, <i>be dark.</i>	" de la neige, <i>be snowy.</i>
s'agir, <i>be the matter, the question, at stake.</i>	y avoir, <i>there be.</i>	" sombre, <i>be dark.</i>	" de la pluie, <i>be rainy.</i>
s'ensuivre, <i>follow.</i>	faire beau (temps), <i>be fine.</i>	" nuit, <i>"</i>	" du vent, <i>be dusty, etc.</i>
paraître, <i>seem.</i>	" mauvais (temps), <i>be bad weather.</i>	" du vent, <i>be windy.</i>	

Il lui est arrivé de grands malheurs.
 Il s'est agi de votre honneur.
 Il s'ensuit de là que vous avez tort.
 Il importe beaucoup qu'il soit ici.
 Il a fait gros temps sur la Manche.

*Great misfortunes have happened to him.
 Your honor has been at stake.
 It follows from that that you are wrong.
 His presence here is one of great importance.
 There was rough weather on the Channel.*

THÈME 46.

Translate. Comment on the auxiliary verbs, the place of the negative, the voice employed.

1. Où est-ce que nous en sommes demeurés de notre leçon, Victor ? Nous en étions à la leçon des verbes pronominaux, n'est-ce pas ? 2. Voilà où nous en sommes demeurés. Mais, monsieur, puisque nous n'avons pas cessé de travailler depuis ce matin, nous sommes décidés à vous demander la permission de nous divertir un peu. 3. Que faut-il faire pour nous divertir ? 4. Il faut que vous nous fassiez des contes. 5. A quoi bon les contes ? Les élèves qui ne se sont pas habitués au travail sont bien à plaindre. 6. Qu'est-ce que vous nous avez souvent dit : Heureux les élèves qui se sont amusés en s'instruisant. 7. Je ne me suis pas attendu à cette réponse, mais je m'aperçois de la force de votre observation. Cependant je ne m'y rends pas à discrétion. Aussitôt que vous vous serez acquis de votre devoir, nous aurons les contes. 8. Cela se fera facilement. 9. Dépêchez-vous donc de traduire les phrases du thème. 10. Les vertus se perdent dans l'intérêt, comme les fleuves se perdent dans l'océan. 11. Apprenez comment les lis des champs croissent ; ils ne travaillent ni ne filent. 12. Si un fou savait se taire il passerait bientôt pour sage. 13. Le blé de mars se sème au printemps. 14. Faut-il désespérer du but parce qu'on s'est trompé de chemin. 15. Cet homme est changé à ne plus le reconnaître. Sa femme est morte il y a deux mois. Ses enfants sont allés en Amérique et y sont restés. Il y a huit jours qu'il n'est pas sorti de son lit. 16. M. A. est-il à la maison ? 17. Il n'y est pas. Il est sorti depuis une heure. M. B. a sorti, mais il vient de rentrer. Il est monté dans sa chambre. 18. Il est tombé de la pluie ; puis il a neigé ; puis le thermomètre a descendu de vingt degrés en vingt-quatre heures ; il a fait un froid affreux. 19. Puis il a fait beau temps et les neiges qui sont tombées ont disparu subitement. 20. En deux jours les rivières ont crû deux mètres. 21. Nous sommes convenus de vous dire que nous avons changé d'avis. 22. Au onzième siècle l'Angleterre fut conquise par les Normans. En 1492 l'Amérique fut découverte par Christophe Colomb. 23. Il se trouve de belles choses dans le livre que vous m'avez prêté. 24. Vous en rappelez-vous quelques-unes ? 25. L'homme qui est aimé des gens d'esprit ne sera ni blessé ni offensé par le mépris des sots. 25. Il était autrefois un honnête homme, mais il mourut de chagrin de se trouver seul au monde. 26. Les médecins se porteraient mal, si tout le monde se portait bien. 27. Un homme se portait bien ; il voulut se porter mieux ; il consulta son médecin ; il mourut.

EXERCISE 47.

1. Where is George to-day ? Why has he not arrived ? It is not often that we have to wait for him. 2. Do you not know that a misfortune has happened him ? 3. I have been told nothing about it. What is the matter ? 4. You remember that yesterday morning there

was a t
lightene
go to th
of the ri
(tellemen
easy thin
great im
and he
had unfo
raining
making
when he
but he c
in the w
were hea
but he h
allowed
than he
follow h

A Der
poor der
say anyt
hoping t
avenge h
street, h
had fall
through
the insu
his pock
that ven
imprude
and crue

Justic
camel-d
stantino
follow t
camel-d
had not
When t
covered
know h
The cad
"What
entruste
the cad
silk bal
can you

was a terrible storm. 5. It rained and snowed and thundered and lightened. 6. It appears (*paraître*) that in the evening George had to go to the house of one of his relatives, who lives on (*de*) the other side of the river. 7. Usually the river can be easily crossed, but it had so (*tellement*) swollen from the rains that had fallen, that it was not an easy thing to (*de*) pass it even on the bridge. 8. However it was of great importance to George to see (that George should see) his relative, and he resolved to (*se décider à*) cross the bridge. 9. The current had unfortunately carried away a part of it. 10. It was dark, it was raining hard, and George, thinking that there was no danger, was making haste. 11. He had scarcely arrived at the middle of the bridge when he fell into the water. 12. He has not been drowned (*se noyer*) but he came near (*s'en falloir*) losing his life. 13. He stayed some time in the water, clinging (*se cramponner*) to the bridge, but at last his cries were heard, and some one came to his help. 14. George returned home, but he has caught such a cold (*s'enrhumer tellement*) that he has not been allowed to go out. 15. I went to see him this afternoon; he is better than he was this morning. 16. It is to be hoped that no bad results will follow his accident. 17. Let us rejoice at (*se réjouir de*) his escape.

COMPOSITION 48.

Eastern Stories.

A Dervish's Vengeance.—A favorite of the Sultan threw a stone at a poor dervish who had asked [to] him for alms. The dervish did not dare say anything¹; but he picked-up the stone and put it in his pocket, hoping that sooner or later² that stone would be-of-use³ to him to⁴ avenge himself. A few days afterwards he heard a great tumult in the street, he inquired⁵ what was the matter and learned that the favorite had fallen into⁶ disgrace, and that the Sultan was having him led⁷ through the streets of the town, bound upon a camel and given-up⁸ to the insults of the people. At once⁹ the dervish drew the stone from his pocket, but it was only to¹⁰ throw it away¹¹. I feel, exclaimed he, that vengeance is never in place¹²; for if our enemy is powerful, it is imprudent and senseless; if on the contrary he is unfortunate, it is base and cruel.

Justice among¹³ the Turks.—A merchant having confided to a Turkish camel-driver some bales of silk to¹⁴ transport [them] from Alep to Constantinople, set out¹⁵ with him; but having fallen ill, he could not follow the caravan, which consequently arrived long before him. The camel-driver imagined at the end of a few weeks that, since¹⁶ his man had not come, he had died, sold the silks and changed¹⁷ his profession. When the merchant had arrived, he sought for the camel-driver, discovered him and demanded his goods. The knave feigned¹⁸ not to¹⁹ know him, and denied ever having (to (*de*) have) been a camel-driver. The cadi before whom the affair was carried, said to the merchant: "What do you demand?"—"I demand twenty bales of silk that I entrusted²⁰ to that man."—"What answer do you give to that?" said the cadi to the camel-driver.—"I do not know what he means²¹ by his silk bales. I have never seen or (nor) known him." "What proof can you give of what you advance?" asked the cadi of (to) the mer-

chant—"No other than my word."—"You are two rascals; withdraw²⁰ from before my presence," said the cadi turning his back on (to) them. When they had gone out, the cadi placing himself at the window, exclaimed: "Camel-driver, one word." The Turk turns his head without thinking that he had just abjured his old²¹ profession. The cadi has him seized, and condemns him to the bastinado²².

¹Anything in negative sentences is rien. ²tôt ou tard. ³servir. ⁴à. ⁵s'informer de. ⁶en. ⁷Cf. 185, b. ⁸livré. ⁹à l'instant. ¹⁰pour. ¹¹jeter loin de lui. ¹²à propos. ¹³chez. ¹⁴se mettre (190, 48) en route. ¹⁵puisque. ¹⁶changer de. ¹⁷seindre de (195, 40). ¹⁸re-mettre. ¹⁹vouloir dire. ²⁰se retirer. ²¹"Old" in the sense of "former," ancien. ²²bastonnade.

XI. THE IRREGULAR VERBS (VERBES IRRÉGULIERS).

193. The treatment of the conjugations of the verb advanced in 171, 172, 173, 174, although the treatment almost universally followed, is without practical advantage, and of little, if any, scientific value.

It is worth while, especially with a view to the Irregular Verbs, to consider briefly another possible grouping of verbs.

There are in the French language two chief conjugations,* differing from one another in the main only in the sing. of the pres. and past def. of the indicatives, in the past participle, and in the infinitive. The terminations of these conjugations are as follow:—

I.		II.		I.		II.	
Indic. pres.	—e	—s	Future.	—er, —ir, —r, ai	Subj. pres.	—e	
	—es	—s		as		—es	
	—e	—t		a		—e	
		—ons		ons		—ions	
Imperfect.	—ez		Fut. imp. (Cond.)	ez	Subj. imperf. P. part. Inf.	—iez	
	—ent			ont		—ent	
		—ais		—er, —ir, —r, ais		—a, —u, —i sse	
		—ais		ais		sses	
Past def.		—ait	Imperfect.	ait		—t	
		—ions		ions		ssions	
		—iez		iez		ssiez	
		—aient		aient		ssent	
	—ai	—i(u)s		—e		—é	—u(l)
	—as	—i(u)s					
	—a	—i(u)t					
		mes					
		tes				—ons	—ir
	—è	rent				—ez	
						—er	—oir
							—re

I.

194. In Conjugation I., which may be termed the *Conjugation in a, e*, the root of the verb sometimes undergoes certain phonetic and orthographical changes, which

* In the treatment of the Conjugation of the verb here outlined, the Present Participle is regarded as containing the root of the verb in a purer form than the Infinitive, and is consequently taken as the point of departure.

The student of the Irregular Verbs is urged to proceed likewise from the present participles, not from the infinitives; for in so doing he will find not only that his labor will be greatly lessened, but that in the observation of the changes that the verbs undergo, a most interesting phase of the French study will be revealed.

have been me

2. cueillir in
Its irregular

195. In Co
the verb ofte
following na

196. Conve

1. In ss, s
and tt before
paraissav
battant (

2. In m, s
dormant
recevant

3. In qu,
vainquan

4. In gn,
oraignan

5. In l, l u
tion then ea

voulant
6. In -en
il vend.

7. When -
except the p
finissam
finis

197. Vow

1. e mut
recevan
tenant (

2. é, é be
acquéra

3. u, u b
buvant

4. y, y u
croyant

198. Subj

a. Verbs
etc., are pe

Conjunction
are in i.

b. Verbs
gation) van
Def. and P

c. Verbs
vainere, e
-oindre, e
196, 4. T

have been mentioned in 175. To it belong: 1. All verbs whose infinitives end in *-er*;
2. *cueillir* in present and future tenses; *offrir*, *ouvrir*, *travailler*, in the present tense.
Its irregular verbs are *aller*, *envoyer*, *renvoyer*.

195. In Conjugation II., which may be termed the *Conjugation in i, u*, the root of the verb often undergoes certain phonetic and orthographical changes, mainly of the following nature.

196. Consonant Changes in the Present Tenses. When the root of the verb ends:

1. In **ss**, *ss* is dropped before consonantal terminations; in **tt**, *t* disappears before *s*, and **tt** before *t*.

paraissant (*paraître*, *appear*): je paraiss, tu paraiss, il paraît.
battant (*battre*, *beat*): je bats, tu bats, il bat.

2. In **m, s, v, t**, the consonant is dropped before consonantal terminations.
dormant (*dormir*, *sleep*): je dors, tu dors, il dort.
recevant (*recevoir*, *receive*): je reçois, tu reçois, il reçoit.

3. In **qu**, *qu* becomes *c* before *u*, before a consonant, or when final.
vainquant (*vaincre*, *conquer*): je vaincs, je vaincrai, vaincu.

4. In **gn**, *gn* becomes *n* before consonantal terminations.
craignant (*craindre*, *fear*): je crains, tu crains, il craint; nous craignons, etc.

5. In **l**, *l* usually modifies into *au* before consonantal terminations: *s* of the termination then easily becoming *x*.

voulant (*vouloir*, *will*): je veux, tu veux, il veut; nous voulons, etc.

6. In **-end**, there is no terminal *t* in the 3rd pers. pres. indic. Je vends, tu vends, il vend.

7. When **-iss** occurs after the root it will be found (subject to 193, 1) in all tense except the past def., the infinitive, past part., and the tenses derived from them.

finissant (*finir*): je finis, nous finissons, je finissais, etc. But: je finis (past), je finirai, j'ai fini.

197. Vowel Changes. When the root syllable of the verb contains:

1. **e mute**, *e* is strengthened into *oi* or *ie* before weak terminations.
recevant (*recevoir*, *receive*): je reçois, que je reçoive, qu'ils reçoivent.
tenant (*tenir*, *hold*): je tiens, que je tienne, qu'ils tiennent.

2. **é, ê** becomes *ie* before weak terminations.
acquérant (*acquérir*, *acquire*): j'acquiers, tu acquiers, qu'ils acquièrent.

3. **u, u** becomes *oi* before weak terminations.
buvant (*boire*, *drink*): je bois, tu bois, que je boive, qu'ils boivent.

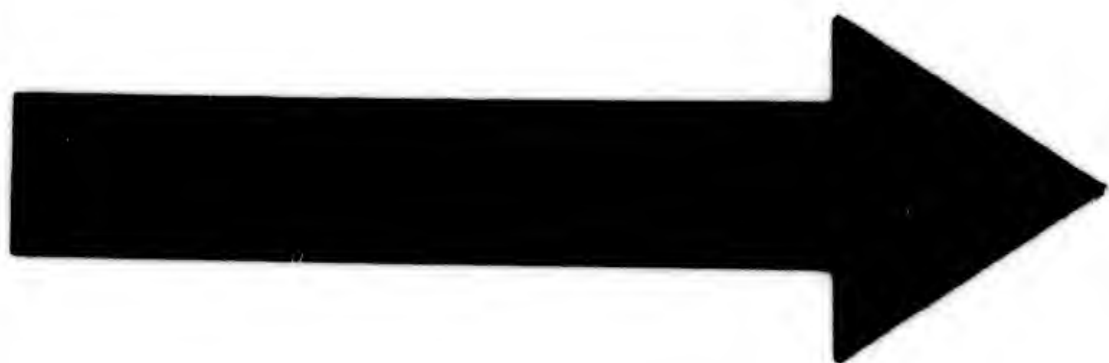
4. **y, y** usually becomes *i* before weak terminations.
croyant (*croire*, *believe*): je crois, tu crois, que je croie, qu'ils croient.

198. Subject to the phonetic laws mentioned above, Conjugation II. embraces:

a. Verbs in **-ir**, of which *dormir*, *partir*, *mentir*, *se repentir*, *sentir*, *servir*, *sortir*, etc., are perfectly regular. Verbs that add *iss* to the root (verbs of the so-called Second Conjugation) are irregular according to 196,—1, 7. The Past Def. and Perf. Parts are in 1.

b. Verbs in **-oir**. Verbs ending in *ev* in the root (verbs of the so-called Third Conjugation) vary from the conjugation according to 196, 2; 197, 1. These verbs have Past Def. and Perf. Part. in **u**.

c. Verbs in **-re**. *Battre* is regular except for 196, 1; *suiivre*, except for 196, 2; *vaincre*, except for 196, 3. So also verbs in **-aitre**, except for 196, 1; 196, 7. Verbs in **-oindre**, **-eindre**, **-aindre** have a strong Past Part. in **-t**, but are regular, except as to 196, 4. The regular Past Def. is in **i**, and the Past Part. in **u**.



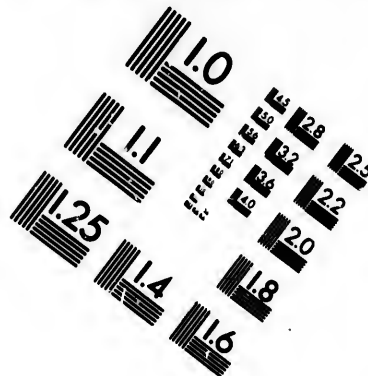
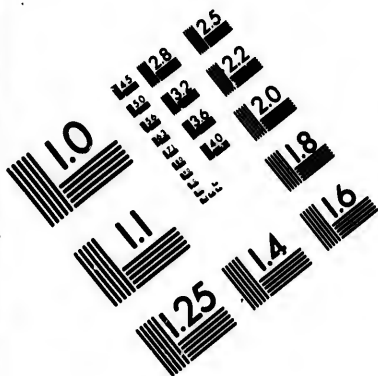
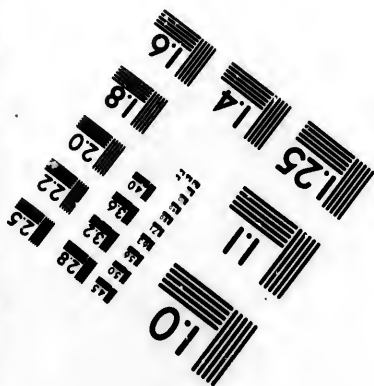
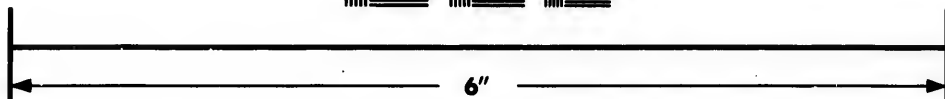
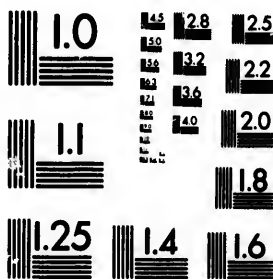


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic Sciences Corporation

**23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503**

1.8 2.0 2.2 2.5
3.6 3.2 2.8
4.8 5.6

10
11

193. THE IRREGULAR CONJUGATIONS.

This table contains for the most part only the so-called primitive tenses: the derived tenses may be easily obtained according to rule (163). Where deviations from this rule occur such deviations are stated. Where the root changes for the 1st Pers. of the Future, it changes for all persons, and varies similarly for the Imperf. Fut. (Conditional).

Verbs forming their compound tenses with *être* (189) are marked *; those taking either *être* or *avoir* (190) are marked †.

"Weak termination" is abbreviated w.t.; "consonant termination," c.t.; "mute e termination," m.e.t. (See 166.) Black-faced letters indicate the chief parts of the verb, and irregularities in the formation of other parts. The dash indicates a part acting.

The similarity between the vowel of the termination in the Past Part. and in the Past Def. should be noticed. Exceptions: *révir*, *votr*, *battre*, *vaincre*.

[The student is advised always to conjugate the complete verb from these tables.]

MODEL VERB.	INDICATIVE.			PRESENT SUBJ.	REMARKS.
	Infinitive. Participle.	Present.	Past Def.		
1. * <i>ALLER, go</i> <i>allant</i> <i>allé</i>	vais vas va	allons allez vont	allai allas, etc. allâmes	ailles aillent aillent	Fut. irai, iras, ira, etc. a into <i>as</i> before m.e.t. * s en aller.
2. <i>ENVOYER, send</i>	Regular except in the	Regular except in the	Futures. See		Fut. enverrai, etc. So, renvoyer.
3. <i>ACQUAIRE, acquire</i> <i>acquérant</i> <i>acquis</i>	acquiers acquiers acquiert	acquérons acquérez acquiert	acquis acquis, etc. acquies	acquière acquies acquies	Fut. acquerrai, etc. é into <i>te</i> before w.t. conquérir, s'enquérir, requérir.
4. <i>BOUILLIR, boil</i> <i>bouillant</i> <i>bouilli</i>	bous bous bout	bouillons bouillez bouillent	bouillis bouillia, etc. bouillimes	bouillons bouillez bouillent	Bouillir is intransitive. Faire bouillir, <i>boil</i> , transitive.
5. <i>COURIR, run</i> <i>courant</i> <i>couru</i>	cours cours court	courons cours courent	courus cours, etc. courûmes	cours cours courent	Fut. courrai. Compounds of courir.
6. <i>cueillir, gather</i> <i>cueillant</i> <i>cueilli</i>	cueille cueilles cueille	cueillons cueillez cueillent	cueillis cueillis, etc. cueillimes	cueillons cueillez cueillent	Fut. cueillerai. Compounds of <i>cueillir</i> : sailir, <i>jet out</i> . Fut.: assaillirai.

7. <i>DORMIR, sleep</i> <i>dormant</i> <i>dormi</i>	dors dors dort	dormons dormez dorment	dormis, dormis, etc. dormîmes	dorme dormes dorme	dormions dormiez dorment	dormir, partir, monter, sentir, se repentir, servir, s'écarter. Final consonant of root (m, t, v) is dropped before c.t. y into i before w.t. s'entuir.
8. <i>FUIR, flee</i> <i>fuyant</i> <i>fui</i>	fuis fuis fuit	fuyons fuyez fuient	fuis fuis, etc. fuies	fuite fuites fuies	fuyions fuyiez fuient	

7. **DORMIR, sleep**
dormant
dormi

dors
dors
dors

dormis,
dormis, etc.
dormimes

dors
dormons
dormez

dorme
dormes
dorme

dormir, partir, mentir, sentir, se repen-
tir, servir, *teindre.
Final consonant of root (*m, t, v*) is drop-
ped before *c.t.*
y into *i* before *w.t.*
*s'ensuivre.

8. **FUIR, flee**
fuyant
fui

fuis
fuis
fuit

fuis,
fuis, etc.
fuites

fuis
fuyons
fuyez

fuite
fuites
fuite

*s'ensuivre.

9. ***MOURIR, die**
mourant
mort

mours
meurs
meurt

mourus
mourus, etc.
mourumes

mours
mourons
mourez

mours
meurs
meurt

Fut.: mourra.
ou into *eu* before *w.t.*
*se mourir (*Pres.* and *Imp.* used), *be on*
the point of death.
ouvrir, couvrir, offrir, souffrir, and com-
pounds.

10. **OUVRIR, open**
ouvrant
ouvert

ouvre
ouvres
ouvre

ouverts
ouverts, etc.
ouvrimmes

ouvre
ouvrons
ouvrez

ouvre
ouvres
ouvre

*se mourir (*Pres.* and *Imp.* used), *be on*
the point of death.
ouvrir, couvrir, offrir, souffrir, and com-
pounds.

11. **TENIR, hold**
tenant
tenu

tiens
tiens
tient

tins
tins, etc.
tinmes

tiens
tenons
tenez

tiens
tenies
tiens

Fut.: tiendra. *s* into *te* before *w.t.*
n doubled before *m.c.t.*
Tenir, *venir, and their compounds.

12. **VÊTIR, clothe**
vêtant
vêtu

vêts
vêts
vét

vêtis
vêtis, etc.
vétimes

vêts
vétions
vêtez

vête
vétas
vété

*se vêtir, *clothe one's self.*
dévêtir, dévêt.
revêtir, revêt.

13. **FAILLIR, fail**
faillant
failli

faux
faux
faut

faillis
faillis, etc.
faillimes

faillis
failliez
faillent

faillie
faillies
faillie

Fut.: fandrai, etc.
Mostly used in *cp. tenses* or impersonally.
Faillir, *become bankrupt*, may be regular.
Défaillir, *fail*, je défaus, tu défaus, il
défaut.
Ci-quit (on epitaphs), *Here lies*.

14. **GÊNER, lie (ill or**
dard)
gisant

gise
gise
gisent

gise
gise
gisent

gise
gisent
gisent

*se vêtir, *clothe one's self.*
dévêtir, dévêt.
revêtir, revêt.

15. ***ISSIR, descend, used in P.P. issu**: Je suis issu(e) de la race.

gise
gise
gisent

gise
gise
gisent

gise
gisent
gisent

Fut.: fandrai, etc.
Mostly used in *cp. tenses* or impersonally.
Faillir, *become bankrupt*, may be regular.
Défaillir, *fail*, je défaus, tu défaus, il
défaut.
Ci-quit (on epitaphs), *Here lies*.

16. **FLAUR, strike, used in the Infinitive**: On a pris cette ville sans coup férir.

gise
gise
gisent

gise
gise
gisent

gise
gisent
gisent

Fut.: fandrai, etc.
Mostly used in *cp. tenses* or impersonally.
Faillir, *become bankrupt*, may be regular.
Défaillir, *fail*, je défaus, tu défaus, il
défaut.
Ci-quit (on epitaphs), *Here lies*.

17. **QUÊRE, rarely used except in the Infinitive**: On a pris cette ville sans coup férir.

gise
gise
gisent

gise
gise
gisent

gise
gisent
gisent

Fut.: fandrai, etc.
Mostly used in *cp. tenses* or impersonally.
Faillir, *become bankrupt*, may be regular.
Défaillir, *fail*, je défaus, tu défaus, il
défaut.
Ci-quit (on epitaphs), *Here lies*.

18. **QUÊRE, be in quest of, used in the Infinitive**: On a pris cette ville sans coup férir.

gise
gise
gisent

gise
gise
gisent

gise
gisent
gisent

Fut.: fandrai, etc.
Mostly used in *cp. tenses* or impersonally.
Faillir, *become bankrupt*, may be regular.
Défaillir, *fail*, je défaus, tu défaus, il
défaut.
Ci-quit (on epitaphs), *Here lies*.

199. THE IRREGULAR CONJUGATIONS (Continued).

MODEL VERB.	INDICATIVE.		IMPERATIVE.	PRESENT SUBJ.	REMARKS.
	Present.	Past Def.			
III. 22. <i>Assoir, seat.</i> <i>asseoyant</i> <i>assis</i>	<i>assieds</i> <i>assieds</i> <i>assieds</i>	<i>assieds</i> <i>assieds</i> <i>assieds</i>	<i>assieds</i> <i>assieds</i> <i>assieds</i>	<i>asseye</i> <i>asseyez</i> <i>asseyez</i>	Verbe Conjugated like the Model.
Also conjugated: <i>asseoyant</i> <i>assis</i>	<i>asseoyez</i> <i>asseoyez</i> <i>asseoyez</i>	<i>asseoyez</i> <i>asseoyez</i> <i>asseoyez</i>	<i>asseoyez</i> <i>asseoyez</i> <i>asseoyez</i>	<i>asseoyez</i> <i>asseoyez</i> <i>asseoyez</i>	
23. <i>Déchoir, decline,</i> <i>grou less</i> <i>déchu</i>	<i>déchois</i> <i>déchois</i> <i>déchois</i>	<i>déchois</i> <i>déchois</i> <i>déchois</i>	<i>déchois</i> <i>déchois</i> <i>déchois</i>	<i>déchois</i> <i>déchois</i> <i>déchois</i>	<i>Fut.: assiderai or asseyerai.</i> <i>*s'éc.: voir, sit down.</i> <i>*se.: assoir, sit down again, grow calm.</i> <i>Fut.: assiderai.</i>
24. <i>Mouvoir, move</i> <i>mouvant</i> <i>mû</i> (But: <i>mus,</i> <i>mue.</i>)	<i>meus</i> <i>meus</i> <i>meus</i>	<i>meus</i> <i>meus</i> <i>meus</i>	<i>meus</i> <i>meus</i> <i>meus</i>	<i>meuve</i> <i>meuve</i> <i>meuve</i>	<i>Fut.: décherrai (Im.: déchoyais)</i> change <i>y</i> into <i>i</i> before <i>m. t.</i> in Present. The Académie does not admit the bracketed forms.
25. <i>Pouvoir, can, be</i> <i>able</i> <i>pouvant</i> <i>pu</i>	<i>puis (peux)</i> <i>peux</i> <i>peut</i>	<i>pus</i> <i>pus</i> <i>pus</i>	<i>peux</i> <i>peux</i> <i>peux</i>	<i>puisse</i> <i>puisse</i> <i>puisse</i>	ou into <i>eu</i> before <i>w. t.</i> in the Present. <i>émouvoir, excite, promouvoir, promote</i> are used only in Infin. and P. P.; they have no <i>a</i> in P. 2. masc.
26. <i>Savoir, know</i> <i>(things)</i> <i>sachant</i> <i>sû</i>	<i>sais</i> <i>sais</i> <i>sait</i>	<i>sus</i> <i>sus</i> <i>sus</i>	<i>sache</i> <i>sachons</i> <i>sachez</i>	<i>sache</i> <i>sachez</i> <i>sachez</i>	<i>Fut.: pourrai.</i> <i>Puis-je?</i> is preferable to <i>peux-je?</i> <i>Imperf.: savais, Fut.: saurai.</i> Je la sais savante, I know her to be learned. Je sais écrire, I know how to write.
27. <i>Valoir, be worth</i> <i>valant</i> <i>valu</i>	<i>vaut</i> <i>vaut</i> <i>vaut</i>	<i>valus</i> <i>valus</i> <i>valus</i>	<i>vaut</i> <i>vaut</i> <i>vaut</i>	<i>valle</i> <i>vallez</i> <i>vallez</i>	<i>Fut.: vaudrai.</i> <i>prévaloir, prevail, becomes in the Pres.</i> Subj.: que je <i>prévale</i> , etc. <i>ai</i> is modified before <i>w. t.</i>

28. <i>Voir, see</i> <i>voyant</i> <i>vu</i>	<i>vois</i> <i>vois</i> <i>voit</i>	<i>vis</i> <i>vis</i> <i>vis</i>	<i>vois</i> <i>voyons</i> <i>voyez</i>	<i>voie</i> <i>voies</i> <i>voie</i>	<i>Fut.: verrai.</i> <i>y</i> into <i>i</i> before <i>m. t.</i> in the Present. Opda. of <i>voir</i> . But <i>pourvoir, provide,</i> and <i>dépourvoir, deprive,</i> have the Past Def.: <i>pourvus</i> , etc., and the <i>Fut. pourvoirai.</i> <i>pourvoir, become in the Fut.</i>
--	---	--	--	--	---

prévaloir, prevail, becomes in the Pres.
Subj.: que je prévale, etc.
al is modified before w, t.

vaill
vaillions
vailliez
vaillent

vaux
vaux
vaux
valez

vaus
vaus
vaus
valumes

vaions
valez
valent

vaut
vaut
vaut

28. VOIR, see
voyant
vu

vols
vols
voit

vis
vis, etc.
vimes

vols
vols
vols
valez

vols
vols
vols
valez

vols
vols
vols
valez

Fut.: verrai.
g into *i* before m, t, in the Present.
Cpds. of voir. But pourvoir, provide, and dépourvoir, deprive, have the Past Def.: pourvus, etc., and the *Fut. pourvoirai.*
Prévoir, foresee, becomes in the *Fut. prévoirai.*

29. VOULOIR, wish,
will
voulant
voulu

vouls
vouls
voit

vouls
vouls, etc.
voulumes

vouls
vouls
vouls
valez

vouls
vouls
vouls
valez

Fut.: voudrai.
The Imperat. forms are rarely used.
But: Voulez-vous bien vous taire, Please be quiet. Veuillez le faire, Be so kind as to do it.

30. *ÉCHOIR, fall to
the lot of, fall
due
échéant
échu

échoit (échet) échoient

échus
échus, etc.
échumes

échus
échus
échus
valez

échus
échus
échus
valez

Fut.: écherrai (échoirai).
The verb is rarely used except in the 3rd Pers.; lacks also the Imperf. choir, fall, past part. chu, lacks all other parts.
Cf. 23.

31. FAILLIR, be neces-
sary, must
failli

faillit

faillit

faillit

faillit

Fut.: il faillait. *Fut.: il faudra.*
Used only in 3rd Pers. Sing.
Il me (te, lui) faut aller. I (thou, he) must go.

32. PLEUVOIR, rain
pleuvant
plu

pleut

pleut

pleut

pleut

Fut.: il pleuvra.

33. SEMER, be suit-
able, becoming
seyant

seme

seme

seme

seme

Fut.: siéra.
Used in the 3rd Pers.: Ces couleurs lui sièrent. Those colors become her. Messecoir, fit badly.

34. BATTRE, beat
battant
battu

bats
bats
bat

battis
battis, etc.
battimes

bats
battions
battiez

batte
battes
batte

Single consonant before c, t.
Compounds of battre.

199. THE IRREGULAR CONJUGATIONS (Continued).

MODEL VERB.	INDICATIVE.		IMPERATIVE.	PRESENT SUBJ.		REMARKS.
	Present.	Past Def.				
35. <i>Boire, drink</i> <i>buvant</i> <i>bu</i>	bois bois boit	buvons buviez boivent	bus bus, etc. bûmes	boive boives boivent	buvions buviez boivent	u becomes <i>oi</i> before <i>w. t.</i> in the Present. Compounds of <i>boire</i> .
36. <i>Conclure, conclude</i> <i>concluant</i> <i>conclu</i>	conclus conclus conclut	concluons concluez concluent	conclus concluez concluez	conclue concluez conclue	concluons concluez concluent	exclure, <i>excluide</i> . reclure, <i>shut up</i> .
37. <i>Conduire, conduct</i> <i>conduisant</i> <i>conduit</i>	conduis conduis conduit	conduisons conduisez conduisent	conduis conduisez conduisez	conduise conduisez conduise	conduisons conduisez conduisent	All verbs in <i>-uire</i> . <i>nuire, harm, P. Part. nui.</i> <i>luire, shine, retire, gleam, have P. P. (re)lul, and have no Past Def.</i>
38. <i>Connaître, be acquainted with</i> <i>connaissant</i> <i>connu</i>	connais connais connait	connaissons connaissez connaissent	connais connaissez connaissez	connaisse connaissez connaisse	connaissons connaissez connaissez	Observe the <i>t</i> before <i>t</i> . Compounds of <i>connaître</i> . <i>paraître</i> and compounds; also <i>paitre</i> , 51.
39. <i>Coudre, sew</i> <i>cousant</i> <i>cousu</i>	couds couds coud	cousons cousez cousent	couds cousez cousez	couse cousez couse	cousions cousiez cousent	découdre, <i>rip, recoudre, sew again</i> . Il est tout cousu d'or. <i>He is very rich.</i>
40. <i>Craindre, fear</i> <i>craignant</i> <i>craint</i>	crains crains craint	craignons craignez craignent	crains craignons craignez	craigne craignes craigne	craignons craignez craignent	<i>gn</i> of the root becomes <i>n</i> before <i>c. t.</i> all verbs in <i>-aindre, -eindre, -oindre</i> .
41. <i>Croire, believe</i> <i>croyant</i> <i>croi</i>	crois crois croit	croions croiez croient	crois croions croyez	croie croies croie	croions croiez croient	<i>y</i> of the root becomes <i>s i</i> before <i>w. t.</i> in the Present.

42. * <i>Croître, grow</i> <i>croissant</i> <i>croi (force, t.)</i>	crois crois croit	croissons croissez croissent	crois croissons croissez	croisse croisses croisse	croissons croissez croissent	Note the <i>h</i> where the verb has a form similar to <i>croître</i> . <i>s</i> of the root omitted before <i>c. t.</i>
43. <i>Dire, say, tell</i>	dis	disons	dis	disse	disions	Redire, <i>say again</i> . Other compounds

Cru	croit	croissent	croient	crus, etc.	crûs	crois	croisse	croisions	Note the ^A where the verb has a form similar to <i>croître</i> . <i>s</i> of the root omitted before <i>c. t.</i>
42. *CROÏRE, <i>grow</i> croissant orâ (<i>cras</i> , <i>i.</i>)	croît	croissent	croient	crus, etc.	crûs	crois	croisse	croisions	
43. DRA, <i>say, tell</i> disant dit	dis	disent	disent	dis, etc.	dis	dis	disse	disions	Redire, <i>say again</i> . Other compounds of dire have the 2nd Per. Plu. Pres. - <i>ss</i> instead of - <i>itea</i> . For <i>maudire</i> , see 47.
44. ÉCRIRE, <i>write</i> écrivant écrit	écrit	écrivent	écrivent	écrits, etc.	écrits	écrits	écrive	écrivions	<i>v</i> of the root is omitted before <i>c. t.</i> Verbs in - <i>scrire</i> .
45. FAIRE, <i>make</i> faisant fait	fais	faisent	faisent	fais, etc.	fais	fais	fasse	fissions	<i>Fut.</i> : <i>ferai</i> . Compounds of faire. Pronounce <i>ai</i> in <i>faisant</i> , <i>faisons</i> , <i>fais-</i> <i>sent</i> , etc. as <i>é</i> .
46. LIRE, <i>read</i> lisant lu	lis	lisent	lisent	lus, etc.	lus	lis	lisse	lisions	élire, <i>elect</i> . rélire, <i>re-elect</i> . relire, <i>read again</i> .
47. MAUDIRE, <i>curse</i> maudissant maudit	maudit	maudissent	maudissent	maudis, etc.	maudis	maudis	maudisse	maudissions	
48. METTRE, <i>put</i> mettant mis	met	mettent	mettent	mis, etc.	mis	metts	mette	mettions	<i>t</i> omitted before <i>c. t.</i> in the Present. Compounds of mettre.
49. MOUDRE, <i>grind</i> . mouillant moulu	moud	mouillent	mouillent	moulus, etc.	moulus	mouls	moule	mouillons	émoudre, <i>sharpen</i> , <i>whet</i> . remoudre, <i>grind again</i> .
50. *NAÎTRE, <i>be born</i> naissant né	naît	naissent	naissent	naquis, etc.	naquis	naiss	naisse	naissions	<i>ss</i> omitted before <i>c. t.</i> in Pres. Note the ^A before <i>t</i> . renaitre, <i>be born again</i> .
51. PAÎTRE, <i>graze</i> paissant —	pais	paissent	paissent	—	—	pais	païsse	paissions	The P. P. <i>pu</i> is used only in falconry. <i>ss</i> omitted before <i>c. t.</i> So repaître, <i>eat, feed</i> , which has a Past Def. <i>reput</i> , <i>fed</i> , and a P. P. <i>repu</i>

199. THE IRREGULAR CONJUGATIONS (Continued).

MODEL VERB.	INDICATIVE.		IMPERATIVE.	PRESENT SUBJ.	REMARKS.
	Infinitive. Participle.	Present.	Past Def.		
52. PLAIRE, <i>please</i> plaisant plu	plais plaies plaît	plaisons plaisez plaisent	plus plus, etc. plumes	plaise plaises plaise	Verbs Conjugated like the Model.
53. PRENDRE, <i>take</i> prenant pris	prends prends prend	prenons prenez prennent	pris pris, etc. primes	prenne prennes prennent	déplaître, <i>displease</i> ; complaire, <i>flatter</i> . So: taire, <i>not to tell</i> ; *se taire, <i>keep silent</i> ; but <i>Présent</i> : il tait, il se tait, without the A.
54. RÉSOUDRE, <i>resolve</i> résolvant résolu (résous)	résous résous résout	résolvons résolvez résolvent	résolus résolus, etc. résolûmes	résolve résolves résolve	n of the root is doubled before m. & t. Compounds of prendre.
55. RIRE, <i>laugh</i> riant ri	ris ris rit	riions riez rient	ris ris, etc. rimes	rie ries rie	The P. P. résous (no fem.)= <i>changed into</i> : Brouillard résous en pluie. absoudre, <i>absolve</i> , P. P. absous (absoute f.). disoudre, <i>dissolve</i> , P. P. dissous (dissoute f.) sourire, <i>smile</i> .
56. SUFFIRE, <i>suffice</i> suffisant suffi	suffis suffis suffit	suffisons suffisez suffisent	suffis suffis, etc. suffimes	suffise suffises suffise	confire, <i>preserve</i> (fruits, etc.): but P. P. confit.
57. SUIVRE, <i>follow</i> suivant suivi	suis suis suit	suivons suivez suivent	suivis suivis, etc. suivimes	suive suives suive	v of the root dropped before c. t. Compounds of suivre. Il s'ensuit que... <i>It follows that</i> ...
58. TRAIRE, <i>milk</i> trayant trait	trais trais trait	trayons trayez traient	trais trais traient	traie traies traie	y is changed to i before v. t. Compounds of traire.

59. VAINCRE, <i>conquer</i> vainquant vaincu	vaincs vaincs vainc	vainquons vainquez vainquent	vaincus vaincus, etc. vainquimes	vainque vainques vainque	Note the c before c. t. in the Pres. convaincre, <i>convince</i> .
60. VIVRE, <i>live</i> vivant vécu	vis vis vit	vivons vivez vivent	vécus vécus, etc. vécûmes	vive vives vive	v of the root dropped before c. t.

traies	trayez
traie	traient

trayons
trayez

trayez
traient

traits
trait

trayant
trait

Tenses wanting may be supplied by
faire + frire: Il faisait frire. He
was frying.

EXERCISE ON THE SO-CALLED DERIVATIVE TENSES.

Given the parts of the following verbs, complete the conjugation of the verb. (See 168.)

<i>Pres. Part.</i>	dormant ;	<i>Infra.</i>	dormir ;	<i>Past def.</i>	dormis ;	<i>Past. Part.</i>	dormi ;	<i>2nd per. Pres.</i>	<i>Indic.</i>	dors.
"	"	"	écrivait ;	"	"	"	"	"	"	"
"	"	"	écrivis ;	"	"	"	"	"	"	"
"	"	"	mourait ;	"	"	"	"	"	"	"
"	"	"	mourus ;	"	"	"	"	"	"	"
"	"	"	vaincra ;	"	"	"	"	"	"	"
"	"	"	vainquant ;	"	"	"	"	"	"	"
"	"	"	vaincus ;	"	"	"	"	"	"	"
"	"	"	vaincu ;	"	"	"	"	"	"	"
"	"	"	vaincs ;	"	"	"	"	"	"	"

200. INDEX OF IRREGULAR VERBS, SIMPLE AND COMPOUND.

[The number after the verb refers to a verb in Sec. 190, in accordance with the terminations of which the verb so numbered is conjugated.]

absoudre	<i>absolve</i>	54	décrire	<i>describe</i>	44	faillir	<i>fail</i>	13
abstenir	<i>abstain</i>	11	*décroître	<i>decrease</i>	42	faire	<i>make, do</i>	45
abstraire	<i>abstract</i>	58	dédire	<i>disown</i>	43	faillir	<i>must</i>	31
*accourir	<i>run up to</i>	5	déduire	<i>deduce</i>	37	feindre	<i>feign</i>	40
*accroître	<i>increase</i>	42	détaillir	<i>fail</i>	13	fêler	<i>strike</i>	16
accueillir	<i>receive</i>	6	défaire	<i>undo</i>	45	fleurir	<i>flourish</i>	20
acquérir	<i>acquire</i>	3	déjoindre	<i>disjoin</i>	40	forfaire	<i>forfeit</i>	45
admettre	<i>admit</i>	48	démentir	<i>give the lie to</i>	7	friser	<i>fry</i>	65
*advenir	<i>happen</i>	11	démêtrer	<i>put out</i>	48	fuir	<i>flee, shun</i>	8
*aller	<i>go</i>	1	départir	<i>distribute</i>	7	gésir	<i>lie</i>	14
apparaître	<i>appear</i>	38	dépeindre	<i>depict</i>	40	hair	<i>hate</i>	21
appartenir	<i>belong</i>	11	déplaire	<i>displease</i>	52	induire	<i>induce</i>	37
apprendre	<i>learn</i>	58	dépouvoir	<i>deprive</i>	28	inscrire	<i>inscribe</i>	44
assaillir	<i>assail</i>	6	désapprendre	<i>unlearn</i>	58	instruire	<i>instruct</i>	37
asseoir	<i>seat</i>	22	desservir	<i>clear the table</i>	7	interdire	<i>interdict</i>	43
astreindre	<i>constrain</i>	40	détéindre	<i>fade</i>	40	*intervenir	<i>intervene</i>	11
atteindre	<i>attain</i>	40	détenir	<i>detain</i>	11	introduire	<i>introduce</i>	37
attirer	<i>attract</i>	58	détruire	<i>destroy</i>	37	issir	<i>be desecured</i>	15
héner	<i>bles</i>	19	*devenir	<i>become</i>	11	joindre	<i>join</i>	40
boire	<i>drink</i>	35	dévêtir	<i>divest</i>	12	lire	<i>read</i>	46
bouillir	<i>boil</i>	4	dire	<i>say, tell</i>	43	luire	<i>shine</i>	37
braire	<i>bray</i>	61	disconvenir	<i>deny</i>	11	maintenir	<i>maintain</i>	11
bruire	<i>rattle</i>	62	discourir	<i>discourse</i>	5	malfaire	<i>do ill</i>	45
ceindre	<i>gird</i>	40	déjoindre	<i>disjoin</i>	40	maudire	<i>curse</i>	47
*choir	<i>fall</i>	30	*disparaître	<i>disappear</i>	38	méconnaître	<i>not to recognize</i>	38
circonscrire	<i>circumscribe</i>	44	dissoudre	<i>dissolve</i>	55	médire	<i>slander</i>	43
circovenir	<i>circumvent</i>	11	distraindre	<i>distract</i>	58	mentir	<i>lie</i>	7
clorre	<i>close</i>	63	dormir	<i>sleep</i>	7	méprendre	<i>mistake</i>	53
commettre	<i>commit</i>	48	ébouillir	<i>boil away</i>	4	messeoir	<i>be unbecoming</i>	33
comparaître	<i>appear</i>	38	*échoir	<i>fall due</i>	30	mettre	<i>put</i>	48
complaire	<i>humnor</i>	52	éclorre	<i>blow, hatch</i>	64	moudre	<i>grind</i>	49
comprendre	<i>understand</i>	53	éconduire	<i>show out</i>	37	*mourir	<i>die</i>	9
compromettre	<i>compromise</i>	48	écrire	<i>write</i>	44	mouvoir	<i>more</i>	24
conclure	<i>conclude</i>	36	élire	<i>elect</i>	46	naître	<i>be born</i>	50
concourir	<i>concur</i>	5	emboire	<i>coat (with oil)</i>	35	nuire	<i>harm</i>	37
conduire	<i>conduct</i>	37	émettre	<i>emit</i>	48	obtenir	<i>obtain</i>	11
confire	<i>preserve</i>	56	émouvoir	<i>whet</i>	49	offrir	<i>offer</i>	10
conjoindre	<i>conjoin</i>	40	empreindre	<i>imprint</i>	40	oindre	<i>anoint</i>	40
connaître	<i>know</i>	38	enceindre	<i>gird</i>	40	omettre	<i>omit</i>	48
conquérir	<i>conquer</i>	3	enclore	<i>enclose</i>	63	ouir	<i>hear</i>	17
consentir	<i>consent</i>	7	encourir	<i>incur</i>	5	ouvrir	<i>open</i>	10
construire	<i>construct</i>	37	endormir	<i>put to sleep</i>	7	paître	<i>graze</i>	51
contenir	<i>contain</i>	11	enduire	<i>lay on a coat of</i>	37	paraître	<i>appear</i>	38
contraindre	<i>constrain</i>	40	entreindre	<i>infringe</i>	40	parcourir	<i>traverse</i>	5
contredire	<i>contradict</i>	43	*enfuir (s')	<i>run away</i>	8	paraître	<i>complete</i>	47
contrefaire	<i>counterfeit</i>	45	enjoindre	<i>enjoin</i>	40	*partir	<i>set out</i>	5
contrevenir	<i>contravene</i>	11	*enquérir (s')	<i>inquire</i>	3	*parvenir	<i>arrive</i>	11
convaincre	<i>convince</i>	59	*ensuivre (s')	<i>follow</i>	57	peindre	<i>paint</i>	40
convaincre	<i>agree, suit</i>	11	entreprendre	<i>undertake</i>	53	permettre	<i>permit</i>	48
coudre	<i>sew</i>	39	entretenir	<i>entertain</i>	11	plaindre	<i>pity</i>	40
courir	<i>run</i>	5	entrevoir	<i>see partly</i>	28	pleure	<i>please</i>	52
couvrir	<i>cover</i>	10	entr'ouvrir	<i>half open</i>	10	pleuvir	<i>rain</i>	32
craindre	<i>fear</i>	40	envoyer	<i>send</i>	2	poindre	<i>sting, dawn</i>	40
croire	<i>believe</i>	41	*éprendre (s')	<i>be smitten</i>	53	poursuivre	<i>pursue</i>	57
*croître	<i>grow</i>	42	équivaloir	<i>be equal</i>	27	pouvoir	<i>provide</i>	28
cueillir	<i>gather</i>	6	éteindre	<i>extinguish</i>	40	pouvoir	<i>can, be able</i>	25
cuire	<i>cook</i>	37	étréindre	<i>draw tight</i>	40	prédire	<i>predict</i>	43
*déchoir	<i>decline</i>	23	exclure	<i>exclude</i>	36	prendre	<i>take</i>	55
déconfire	<i>discomfit</i>	56	extraire	<i>extract</i>	58	prescrire	<i>prescribe</i>	44
découdre	<i>rip</i>	39				pressentir	<i>foresee</i>	7
découvrir	<i>discover</i>	10						

prévaloir
prévenir
prévoir
produire
promettre
promouvoir
proscrire
provenir
querir
rapprendre
rasseoir
rattelindre

reboire
rebouillir
reconnaître
reconnaître
reconquérir
reconstruire
recoudre
recourir
recouvrir
récrire
recroître
recueillir
recuire
redevenir

redire

redormir
réduire
réécrire
refaire
rejoindre

1. I have
away?
brother
You remember
white horse
some years
7. We have
stream
woods
dress as
become a
paint so
you. O
died in (fr
tenir) fr
15. Rem
become
became

200. INDEX OF IRREGULAR VERBS (Continued).

prévaloir	<i>prevail</i>	27	relire	<i>read again</i>	46	sentir	<i>feel</i>	7
prévenir	<i>anticipate</i>	27	remettre	<i>remit</i>	48	seoir	<i>be becoming</i>	33
prévoir	<i>foresee</i>	11	reulire	<i>gleam</i>	37	servir	<i>serve</i>	7
produire	<i>produce</i>	37	remoudre	<i>grind again</i>	49	*sortir	<i>go out</i>	7
promettre	<i>promise</i>	48	rendormir	<i>put to sleep</i>		souffrir	<i>suffer</i>	10
promouvoir	<i>promote</i>	24		<i>again</i>	7	soumettre	<i>submit</i>	48
proscrire	<i>proscribe</i>	44	*renaitre	<i>be born</i>		sourire	<i>smile</i>	55
provenir	<i>proceed</i>	11		<i>again</i>	50	souscrire	<i>subscribe</i>	44
querir	<i>seek</i>	18	rentraire	<i>fine-draw</i>	58	soustraire	<i>subtract</i>	58
rapprendre	<i>relearn</i>	53	renvoyer	<i>send back</i>	2	soutenir	<i>sustain</i>	11
rasseoir	<i>seat again</i>	22	repaitre	<i>feed</i>	38	*souvenir(se)	<i>remember</i>	11
ratteindre	<i>overtake</i>		repartir	<i>set out again</i>	7	subvenir	<i>assist</i>	11
	<i>again</i>	40	repentir (se)	<i>repent</i>	7	suffire	<i>suffice</i>	66
reboire	<i>drink again</i>	35	repandre	<i>resume</i>	53	sulivre	<i>follow</i>	57
rebouillir	<i>boil again</i>	4	requérir	<i>require</i>	3	surcroître	<i>increase</i>	42
reconduire	<i>reconduct</i>	37	résoudre	<i>resolve</i>	54	surfaire	<i>overcharge</i>	45
reconnaître	<i>recognize</i>	38	ressentir	<i>feel, resent</i>	7	surprendre	<i>surprise</i>	53
reconquérir	<i>reconquer</i>	3	*ressortir	<i>go out again</i>	7	*survenir	<i>come on</i>	11
reconstruire	<i>reconstruct</i>	37	*ressouvenir	<i>recall</i>	11	survivre	<i>survive</i>	60
recoudre	<i>sew again</i>	59	restreindre	<i>restrict</i>	40	taire	<i>not to tell</i>	52
recourir	<i>recur</i>	5	retenir	<i>retain</i>	11	teindre	<i>dye</i>	40
recouvrir	<i>cover again</i>	10	retraire	<i>milk again</i>	58	tenir	<i>hold</i>	11
récrire	<i>rewrite</i>	44	revaloir	<i>return good,</i>		traduire	<i>translate</i>	37
recroître	<i>grow again</i>	42		<i>evil</i>	27	traire	<i>milk</i>	58
recueillir	<i>collect</i>	6	*revenir	<i>return</i>	11	transcrire	<i>transcribe</i>	44
recuire	<i>cook again</i>	37	revêtir	<i>re clothe</i>	12	transmettre	<i>transmit</i>	48
redevenir	<i>become</i>		revivro	<i>live again</i>	60	tressaillir	<i>be startled</i>	6
	<i>again</i>	11	revoir	<i>see again</i>	28	vaincre	<i>conquer</i>	59
redire	<i>repeat, cen-</i>		rîre	<i>laugh</i>	55	valoir	<i>be worth</i>	27
	<i>sure</i>	43	rouvrir	<i>reopen</i>	10	*venir	<i>come</i>	11
redormir	<i>sleep again</i>	7	sallir	<i>jut out</i>	6	vêtir	<i>clothe</i>	12
réduire	<i>reduce</i>	37	satisfaire	<i>satisfy</i>	45	vivre	<i>live</i>	60
réélire	<i>re-elect</i>	46	savoir	<i>know</i>	26	voir	<i>see</i>	28
refaire	<i>do over</i>	45	secourir	<i>succor</i>	5	vouloir	<i>will</i>	29
rejoindre	<i>rejoin</i>	40	séduire	<i>seduce</i>	37			

EXERCISE 49.

(Verbes irréguliers de la première et de la deuxième conjugaison.)

1. I have heard say that you are going away to-day. Must you go away? 2. If you consent to-it, I shall leave at five o'clock. 3. My brother and I [we] set out this evening for the little village of—. 4. You remember that our father has acquired a house there, a pretty, white house covered with vines. 5. It belonged to our uncle, but he died some years ago. 6. Since his death we have gone there every summer. 7. We have become very fond of country life. 8. There is a little stream which runs in the meadows, where we bathe. 9. There are woods where the children gather flowers and raspberries. 10. We dress as we please (wish); often we sleep in the open (*en plein*) air; we become strong and healthy during our three weeks' holiday. 11. You paint so well the pleasures of your country life that I shall not detain you. Open your books, however, and finish the lesson. 12. James I. died in 1625; Charles I., in 1649. 13. Little presents maintain (*entretenir*) friendship. 14. The wicked son will die before his father. 15. Remember, O man, that thou art only dust and that thou wilt become dust again. 16. The mother would die happy, if her children became happy. 17. Hate evil without hating evil-doers. 18. John set

out yesterday; Charles and James set out this afternoon; we shall leave to-morrow. 19. He who lies is brave before God and a coward before men. 20. My father returned from Europe yesterday; my mother will return in the (*au*) spring. They wish my brother to return (*pres. subj.*) at Christmas. 21. The French assailed the town while the English held firm against the Russians. 22. You run usually faster than I, but to-day I shall run as fast as you. Let us run. 23. No, do not run. I have run so much that my heart fails me. I have run over (*parcourir*) the whole town. 24. When we opened the door, we discovered the poor woman lying in a corner and badly clad. 25. In her arms she was holding her child. She had evidently suffered much. 26. We offered her food and wine, but nothing could sustain her failing (*défaillir*) strength (*forces* fem. pl.). At half-past ten she died. 27. I have enquired everywhere about her, but without success. 28. Acquire houses, estates, fortune, fame. I doubt that you become (*subj.*) happier for (of) it. 29. Greece has conquered more countries by (*par*) its books than Rome by its arms. 30. The door is half open, the window is shut. Open both. 31. Help (serve to . . . some) Henry to some strawberries, and Mary to cream. 32. We shall go by-and-by (*tantôt*) for a (*à la*) walk. If you will come with us, we shall send away the page. 33. Let us boil some water and make [the] tea. 34. The water is boiling already. I would have offered you some long ago if I had known. 35. Here lies in consecrated earth an honest man whom everybody hated and whom some cursed. 36. Those who hate maintain a fire that burns them. 37. There are pupils who sleep all night and rest all day. 38. A fool will never hold-out (*tenir*) against praises. 39. Never leave without saying farewell to your teacher.

EXERCISE 50.

[Verbes irréguliers de la troisième conjugaison.]

1. Where shall we sit down? Let us seat ourselves in (*à*) the shade of this tree. 2. Let John and Francis sit down beside (*à côté de*) me. 3. Beauty and genius rarely sit down in the same seat. 4. Do you see the lake yonder (*là-bas*) and the river. You can even catch a glimpse of (*entrevoir*) the other coast. 5. Who could weary (*se lasser*) of admiring nature? 6. Such a sight is well worth the price of our journey. 7. I should like to live near here. Do you know who owns the house yonder, that is for sale (*à vendre*)? 8. I should know if I saw Mr. A. He would be able to tell me what you wish to know. 9. This house would not be worth so much as that one, but through its windows we could see all the bay. 10. How much do you think that the latter is worth? 11. This one must be worth four thousand dollars. 12. I didn't think it was worth (*subj.*) so much. 13. I shall see Mr. A. to-morrow and ask him what these houses are worth. 14. Be so kind as to send me the prices of them. 15. I know one thing, said Socrates, I know that I know nothing. 16. There are people who know nothing, but who do not know that they know nothing. 17. One must call that compound ignorance. Why should (is it necessary that) we know anything? Will not our parents provide for us? 18. If you know nothing you will amount to (be worth) nothing. 19. You wish to enjoy (*jouir*

(*de*) life, but who wish the stone. A fool never pre-enthusiasm and selfish pleasure. (*redevable*) to the latter if I could. The wise do. 28. that you n-crow, this think that of the env- to (*d*) rain much that ter oursel- You must kind as to there,—a

1. Writ- beaten gen- I know M- this Mr. S- has drunk from it th- speak to- knew him- prohibited he drank (*mettre à*) fears dea- absolved thing, an- would lik- heaven w- or your l- believe i- them. 18- one visit fortune s- are silent insult (*ou*) will instr-

(de) life, but you do not wish to work, in which you resemble the idler who wishes to eat the kernel (*amande f.*) but who is unwilling to break the stone (*noyau*). 20. To enjoy life one must know how to live. 21. A fool neither rises nor sits down like a man of wit. 22. Ignorance has never prevailed against science; truth always prevails against error; enthusiasm and disinterestedness will always prevail against idleness and selfishness. 23. Knowledge, too, is worth at least as much as pleasure. 24. Remember what Alexander said: I am not less indebted (*redevable*) to Aristotle than to Philip (*Philippe*) my father; if I owe life to the latter, I owe instruction to the former. 25. I should like to stay if I could, but I cannot. 26. Let us will, and we shall be able. 27. The wise man, when he cannot do what he wishes, wishes what he can do. 28. Your teachers wish you to (that you) know and be able in order that you may see what there is [of] good in the world. 29. Ah, said the crow, this lesson is well worth a cheese without doubt. 30. Do you think that one must (subj.) believe all the crowd says? 31. The silence of the envious crowd is equivalent to a praise. 32. But it is commencing to (d) rain. Do you think it will rain (subj.) hard. 33. It has rained so much that the grass is quite wet. 34. What must we do to (*pour*) shelter ourselves from the storm? 35. We must ask shelter at yonder house. You must hurry, children. 36. May I ask you a favor, Henry. Be so kind as to carry these books. 37. Thank you, we shall be able to arrive there,—a little late perhaps, but better (*il vaut mieux*) late than never.

EXERCISE 51.

[Verbes irréguliers de la quatrième conjugaison.]

1. Write, please, on a sheet of paper the following sentences. 2. The beaten general is always wrong. 3. When a man conquers, people say: I know Mr. So-and-So: when a man is conquered, they say: Who is this Mr. So-and-So? 4. Are you acquainted with the proverb, He who has drunk will drink? What do you conclude from it? 5. I conclude from it that habit will always vanquish will. 6. That leads me to (d) speak to you of Mr. H. You used to know him, didn't you. 7. I knew him well, and I am still acquainted with him. 8. His doctor prohibited (*interdire à*) him wine and brandy. 9. During three months he drank only milk and tea. 10. But the other day he began to (*se mettre à*) drink brandy and the doctor fears his death. 11. He who fears death believes that death is an evil. 12. He who repents is absolved from all that there is to fear. 13. Fear nothing, do everything, and you will move the world. 14. Do to others what you would like them to (that they) do (*subj.*) to you. 15. Do thy duty and heaven will do its. 16. There are robbers who take your money (*purser*) or your life. I have known doctors who have taken both. 17. I believe in (d) doctors, but there are people who do not believe in them. 18. I know no better doctor than death; for it makes but one visit and does not make you pay for it. 19. The prophets of misfortune say that such and such a thing is impossible. Do it, and they are silent. 20. Bless those that curse you; do good to those who insult (*outrager*) you. 21. Read good books, for in reading them you will instruct yourself and please [to] your friends. 22. You know a

man by (d) the books he reads. 23. People say of him who joins cunning to force, that he sews the fox's skin to the lion's. 24. He who always says what he believes repents often of having said what he did not believe. 25. People say of children who are growing a great deal: Ill weeds grow apace (ill weed (*mauvaise herbe*) always grows). 26. Man is born, grows, dies. 27. Each honest donkey believes that he brays more melodiously than his comrade. 28. She did not smile on (to) me, she laughed at (*de*) me. 29. Whatever you say to me, I shall never believe that you were paying attention to what you were saying. 30. When day dawns, when the sun shines, the flowers bloom and the waters of the lake gleam. 31. We learn to (d) write well by (*en*) reading authors who have written well. 32. You have done your theme, read it. Let the others keep (*faire*) silence. 33. That is well done. You have put taste and sentiment into-it (*y*). 34. You will make much progress in your studies, if your exercises are always as well done as that one. 35. What authors did you read in your classes last year? 36. We read Souvestre; this year we read Sardou; next year we shall read Daudet. 37. The mill will never grind with the water that is past. 38. He was (*is*) born a dreamer; he gives himself up to (*se repaître de*) idle-fancies (*chimères*); he pleases (to) no one. 39. I am not what I follow, said the donkey-driver, who was following his donkey, for if I were what I follow, I should not be what I am. 40. How many men die without having lived? 41. That is sufficient. As soon as you [shall] have written what I have read you, put your name at the bottom of the sheet, and give it to me.

XII. AGREEMENT OF THE VERB WITH ITS SUBJECT (ACCORD DU VERBE AVEC SON SUJET).

201. General Rule.—The verb varies its form in accordance with the person and number of its subject.

C'est moi qui ai parlé.
C'est l'homme qui a parlé.

C'est nous qui avons parlé.
Ce sont les hommes qui ont parlé.

202. With Compound Subject.—When the subject is made up of two or more parts the verb is put in the plural.

Le frère et la sœur sont arrivés.
The brother and sister have arrived.
Ni l'or ni la grandeur ne nous rendent
heureux.
Neither gold nor grandeur makes us happy.
Le temps ou la mort sont nos remèdes.
Time or death is our remedy.

Toi et ta sœur êtes arrivés.
Thou and thy sister have arrived.
Ni vous ni moi ne sommes heureux.
Neither you nor I am happy.
Vous ou moi irez.
You or I shall go.

NOTE.—When the compound subject contains a pronoun of the first or second person the verb will agree with the first person rather than with the second, and with the second rather than with the third. Generally *nous* or *vous* will be used pleonastically before the verb.

Vous et moi (*nous*) irez.
Lui et moi (*nous*) irez.
Vous et lui (*vous*) irez.

Votre frère et moi (*nous*) irez.
Toi et ta cousine (*vous*) irez.
Vous et votre frère (*vous*) irez.

203. Ex
a. Wit
only with

i. The
of the sub

Ni l'un
Neither
Votre p
Your fa
With pron
ou moi iron

ii. The
Un sold
A soldie

iii. L'un
L'un ou
Either h
Used pron
L'un et l
Ni l'un n

b. The a
Être wit

i. When
noun of the

Ce sont
But: C'e
je tra

NOTE 1.—It
remains in the
C'est qu

NOTE 2.—U
than if plural

Fût-ce

NOTE 3.—S
Je ne voi

ii. When
what follow

Deux en
Two chil

The interro
Est-ce qu

204. W
are used in

b. With a
that follow
quently sin

203. Exceptions.

a. With compound subjects of the third person, the verb agrees only with the last of the nominatives when :

i. The predicate asserts something that can be attributed only to one of the subject nominatives.

Ni l'un ni l'autre ne sera nommé ambassadeur d'Angleterre.
Neither will be appointed English ambassador. (There is but one ambassador.)

Votre père ou M. Blanc sera élu député.
Your father or Mr. Blanc will be elected member of Parliament.

With pronouns of the 1st or 2nd pers. the verb is in such a case always plural : Lui ou moi irons.

ii. The nominatives are synonymous or almost so :

Un soldat et un Français n'abandonne pas lâchement son drapeau.
A soldier and a Frenchman does not basely desert his flag.

iii. *L'un ou l'autre* is used adjectively. (See 107.)

L'un ou l'autre cheval est bon.
Either horse is good.

Used pronominally they take the verb in the singular or the plural.

L'un et l'autre est (sont) bon (s).
Ni l'un ni l'autre ne viendra (viendront).

b. The agreement of *être* with *ce* as subject :

Être with *ce* as its subject become plural in the following instances :—

i. When immediately followed by a plural noun, or by a plural pronoun of the 3rd person.

Ce sont mes amis. Sont-ce vos amis? Ce sont eux. Ce sont elles.

But : C'est son père et ses amis. C'est nous. C'est vous. C'est pour eux que je travaille.

NOTE 1.—If the plural noun has a collective force, as in following sentences, the verb remains in the singular :—

C'est quatre heures qui sonnent déjà. C'est trois francs qu'il doit.

NOTE 2.—Used interrogatively the verb may remain singular, when more euphonious than if plural :

Fût-ce nos biens qu'il fallût sacrifier. Sera-ce nos amis?

NOTE 3.—*Si ce n'est*, *except*, is invariable :

Je ne vois personne, si ce n'est vos amis?

ii. When *ce* is used in place of a preceding plural noun, no matter what follows.

Deux enfants parurent sur le seuil ; c'étaient l'enfant et son conducteur.
Two children appeared on the threshold ; they were the child and his conductor.

The interrogative phrase *est-ce que* is always singular :

Est-ce que mes amis sont venus? Qu'est-ce que ces hommes?

204. With a Collective Noun as Subject. Collective nouns are used in two ways : a. With their strict and full meaning as nouns.

b. With a vague, partitive sense quite subordinate to the complement that follows. The verb agrees with the dominant noun, and is consequently singular after a, and plural after b.

a. Collective sense dominant.

Une troupe de soldats **formait** l'avant-garde: *A troop of soldiers formed the van-guard.*

Le nombre d' quatre cents soldats fut formé de débris du régiment. *The number of four hundred soldiers was formed from the remnants of the regiment.*

Le peu, *the lack of:*

Le peu d'amis qu'elle a la chagrine. *Her lack of friends grieved her.*

b. Noun sense vague, partitive.

Une troupe de barbares **désolèrent** le pays. *A horde of barbarians desolated the country.*

Nombre de convents **furent** détruits. *Many convents were destroyed.*

La plupart des gens **négligent** leurs intérêts. *Most people neglect their own interests.*

So with beaucoup, trop de, peu de, etc.

Le peu, *the few:*

Le peu de leçons que j'ai prises ont suffi. *The few lessons I took sufficed.*

XIII. PLACE OF THE VERB AS SUBJECT (PLACE DU VERBE ET DE SON SUJET).

205. General Rule. The relative place of the verb and its subject in interrogative sentences has already been discussed. See 176, 177.

The subject in assertive sentences usually precedes the verb in French as in English.

206. Exceptions.

1. In parenthetical clauses of the nature: *Yes, he replied; No, said the man*, the subject in French follows the verb.

Où, **répondit** l'homme, nous irons. | Cher Maxime, a repris l'enfant, à bientôt.
Où, **répondit-il**, nous irons. | Frappe, m'ont-ils dit, frappe.

2. In sentences introduced by a predicate adjective, the noun subject follows the verb.

Grande fut sa surprise. Humbles furent d'abord leurs pouvoirs. Tel fut le résultat.

3. In sentences introduced by some adverbial expressions, such as *ainsi, là, ici, alors*, etc., the noun subject is found after the verb, when the verb is not active transitive.

Ainsi mourut cet homme. Non loin s'égare un fleuve. Comme dit le proverbe.

4. When the sentence is introduced by certain adverbial expressions, *aussi, encore, au moins, du moins, à peine, vainement, peut-être, à plus forte raison, toujours, en vain*, the subject personal pronouns and *on* usually, though not necessarily, follow the verb. Should the subject be a noun, a pronoun is often, though not necessarily, employed pleonastically, as in the interrogative order, after the verb.

À peine **était-il** sorti que...
Scarcely had he gone out than...

Peut-être **eût-il** décidé Maître Benoît à attendre. *Perhaps he would have prevailed upon Master Benoit to wait.*

À peine le soleil **était-il** levé que...
Scarcely had the sun risen than...

Peut-être l'homme **serait-il** déjà parti. *Perhaps the man would already have departed.*

5. In adjective and adverbial sentences it is often more elegant to invert the order of noun subject and predicate, when the verb in the usual order would stand at the end of the sentence.

Le relieur auquel a été confié mon Johnson.
La place qu'occupe cette ville célèbre.

Le lion qu'a tué l'homme.
Dites-moi où demeure M. votre frère.

6. When the noun is
Some
However

7. With
Vive

XIV. Com

207. Ma
sitive, and
two langua
ject.

208. Ver

arriver à,
attenter à,
convenir à,
déplaître à,
désobéir à,
se fier à,
importer à,
nuire à,
obéir à,
plaire à,

209. Ver
the Indirect

accabler de
aider de
appuyer de
blâmer de
charger de

congratuler de

consoler de

210. Intr

Object, being

acheter à,
arracher à,
cacher à,
conférer à,
défendre à,
demander à,
dérober à,
emprunter à,

Il lui a volé.
He stole a horse.
Il a demandé.
He has asked.
Je lui ai reproché.
I reproached

6. When the sentence begins with the adverbs *quelque, si, tout...que*, the noun subject follows the verb.

Quelque puissant que soit votre frère. Toutes raisonnables qu'elles sont.
However powerful your brother be. Reasonable as they are.

7. With verbs in the subjunctive mood when *que* is omitted.

Vive la liberté. Puissé-je vous aider. Périssent les tyrans.

XIV. COMPLEMENTS OF CERTAIN VERBS (COMPLEMENTS DE CERTAINS VERBES).

207. Many verbs that in English are Transitive, in French are Intransitive, and *vice versa*. Many verbs corresponding in meaning in the two languages differ in the preposition employed before the indirect object.

208. *Verbs Transitive in English that are Intransitive in French.*

arriver à, reach.	renoncer à, renounce.	douter de, doubt.
attenter à, attempt.	résister à, resist.	gémir de, lament.
convenir à, suit.	ressembler à, resemble.	jouir de, enjoy.
déplaire à, displease.	succéder à, succeed.	manquer de, lack.
désobéir à, disobey.	survivre à, outlive.	se méfier de, mistrust.
se fier à, trust.		se passer de, do without.
importer à, concern.	s'apercevoir de, notice (mentally).	se moquer de, mock, laugh at, etc.
nuire à, injure.	s'approcher de, approach.	se servir de, use.
obéir à, obey.	convenir de, admit.	se souvenir de, remember.
plaire à, please.	se démettre de, resign.	user de, use.

209. *Verbs that require different prepositions in the two languages before the Indirect Object.* Such are:

accabler de, overwhelm with.	couronner de, crown with.	indemniser de, indemnify for.
aider de, help with.	couvrir de, cover with.	louer de, praise for.
appuyer de, aid with.	dédomnager de, make up for.	menacer de, threaten with.
blâmer de, blame for.	se divertir de, have sport with.	plaindre de, pity for.
charger de, charge with.	douer de, endow with.	punir de, punish for.
congratuler de, congratulate on.	féliciter de, congratulate on.	remercier de, thank for.
consoler de, console for.	honorer de, honor with.	remplir de, fill with, etc.

210. *Intransitive verbs that in French require à before the Indirect Object, being in general Verbs of Depriving.*

acheter à, buy from.	infliger à, inflict on.	promettre à, promise.
arracher à, snatch from.	inspirer à, inspire.	prendre à, take away from.
cacher à, hide from.	intéresser à, interest in.	procurer à, procure for.
conférer à, confer on.	mêler à, mix with.	prodiguer à, lavish on.
défendre à, forbid (any one).	ordonner à, order.	répondre à, answer.
demandeur à, ask.	ôter à, take from.	reprocher à, reproach.
dérober à, steal from.	pardonner à, pardon.	souhaiter à, wish.
emprunter à, borrow from.	persuader à, persuade.	voler à, steal from.

Il lui a volé un chapeau.
He stole a hat from him.

Il a demandé son livre, son père, etc.
He has asked for his book, for his father, etc.

Je lui ai reproché sa faute.
I reproached him with his fault.

Il a acheté un livre au libraire.
He bought a book from the book-seller.

But: Il a demandé son livre à son père.
He asked his father for his book.

Je leur ai souhaité le bonjour.
I wished them good day.

And in general those verbs in English which have an object made indirect by position.

He gave her the book (gave the book to her)
Il lui donna le livre.

He told them that (that to them).
Il leur a dit cela.

211. Faire + an Infinitive. *Faire*, followed by an intransitive verb, requires the object to be direct; by a transitive verb to be indirect.

Je l'ai fait chanter.
I have made him sing.

Je lui ai fait chanter cette chanson.
I have made him sing this song.

The same peculiarities of construction are frequently found after *entendre, laisser, ouvrir, voir*.

Faire de, do with : Que ferai-je de cet homme.

212. Several verbs cannot in French have a complement in common, unless the character of the complement required after each verb is similar to that required by the others.

We may say : Il faut honorer, estimer et respecter son père.

We should honor, esteem and respect our father.

We may not say : J'honore et obéis à mon père, because *honorer* requires the direct, *obéir* the indirect object. Say : J'honore mon père et je lui obéis.

XV. POSITION OF COMPLEMENTS (PLACE DES COMPLEMENTS)

The place of the Personal Pronoun objects has already been discussed. (See 156, 157, 158, 159.)

213. Other complements usually follow the verb. When of equal length, the direct object precedes the indirect; when of unequal length, the shorter stands first.

J'ai acheté un livre de votre argent.
Faites l'aumône aux pauvres.

J'ai reproché à Jean sa négligence criminelle.
Faites du bien à ceux qui vous haïssent.

214. In interrogations we say in French, as in English : Que voulez-vous ? De quoi avez-vous besoin ? Quel livre a-t-il perdu ? Combien de livres avez-vous ? (Combien avez-vous de livres ?)

THÈME 52.

Translate. Comment on the concord and government of the verbs.

1. Où sont mesdemoiselles Marie et Julie ? J'espère qu'elles ne font pas aujourd'hui l'école buissonnière. 2. L'une et l'autre sont à l'école. 3. Ce sont elles qui frappent maintenant à la porte. 4. Les voilà qui entrent. 5. Est-ce vous ou Jean, qui remporterez le prix de français, Georges ? Vous et lui vous aimez le français, comme Françoise et moi, nous aimons l'allemand. 6. Ce sera vous, monsieur, qui déciderez dans cette affaire. 7. Du tout, c'est votre travail, vos efforts, qui décideront cela. 8. Julie et Marie ont remporté tous les prix l'année dernière. 9. Cette année ni l'une ni l'autre ne cherchent à les mériter. 10. Ce sont les plaisirs qu'elles recherchent. 11. Ni Jean ni moi ne les remporterons non plus, car un grand nombre d'élèves concourront pour les prix. 12. Travaillez cependant avec constance ; vous êtes d'anciens

élèves qu
thème.
jamais à
trompons
mort sont
mal. 17
nerai le co
mère de d
neur. 21
enfance.
s'approch
positions d
que ma ta
naient les
à des exer
enfants pa
nn médec
locutions :
qui m'ont
30. Ni voi
et des bill
universités
cours.

1. The
the multi
2. "So m
the shade.
Leonidas a
(Lacédém
laws. 4.
5. One da
ended by (br
approache
said the p
8. One da
celebrated
Wishing to
myself on
beauty."
One day,
him answe
water, wh
"you, ma
should sav
(chasse) fo
Meeting a
was doing
king pass.
wishing to
where the

élèves qui devez donner l'exemple aux nouveaux. Commençons le thème. 13. La mort ne pardonne à personne. Personne ne pardonne jamais à la mort. 14. Le temps passe, disons-nous, mais nous nous trompons ; le temps reste, c'est nous qui passons. 15. Le temps ou la mort sont nos remèdes. 16. Ce sont des remèdes qui sont pires que le mal. 17. Plus d'une personne agit sans réfléchir. 18. Je condamnerai le coupable, fût-ce mon fils. 19. Ni cette dame ni sa mère n'est la mère de cet enfant. 20. Il n'y a point de noblesse où manque l'honneur. 21. Voici les lieux où se passèrent les jours de mon heureuse enfance. 22. Napoléon attaqua la ville et s'en empara, mais les Anglais s'approchèrent et s'emparèrent de la rivière. 23. Ils sont parvenus aux positions qu'ils cherchaient à gagner. 24. J'ai oui dire à feu ma mère que ma tante et moi naquîmes le même mois. 25. Les Grecs contraignaient les enfants, dans les écoles publiques, à consacrer plusieurs heures à des exercices violents. 26. Aussi voyait-on rarement parmi eux des enfants pâles, contrefaits ou maladifs. 27. Dans Florence jadis vivait un médecin, célèbre assassin, dit-on. 28. Distinguez entre ces deux locutions : C'est un de mes procès qui m'a ruiné, et C'est un des procès qui m'ont ruiné. 29. Son aménité, sa douceur charme tout le monde. 30. Ni vous ni moi ne connaissons l'avenir. 31. Ce n'était pas de l'or et des billets de banque qui manquaient ; c'était du pain. 32. Aux universités du Canada un grand nombre de jeunes gens suivent les cours.

EXERCISE 53.

1. The Persians wishing to frighten the Spartans, told them that the multitude of their arrows was such that it could hide the sun. 2. "So much the better," replied the Spartans, "we shall fight in (à) the shade. 3. This inscription was read, it is said, on the tomb of Leonidas and his companions : Passer-by (*passant*), go tell Lacedæmonia (*Lacédémone*) that we are the soldiers who have died here to obey her laws. 4. Socrates, like many men, had a wife whom he had to obey. 5. One day after having overwhelmed him with abuse (*injures*), she ended by (*par*) throwing a bucket of water on his head. 6. His friends approached him to laugh at his misfortune. 7. "Did I not tell you," said the philosopher coolly, "that after the thunder rain would come." 8. One day Talleyrand was sitting (seated) between Mme de Staël, the celebrated writer, and Mme Récamier, the celebrated beauty. 9. Wishing to please the ladies, the diplomatist remarked : "I congratulate myself on my good-fortune to (*de*) find myself seated between wit and beauty." 10. "Yes, and neither is yours," added Mme de Staël. 11. One day, to punish Talleyrand for some remark, Mme de Staël made him answer this question : "If Mme Récamier and I fell into the water, which would you save?" 12. "Oh !" answered Talleyrand, "you, madame, you know everything, you know how to swim ; I should save Mme Récamier. 13. Henry IV., in a hunting-expedition, (*chasse*) found himself separated from his guards and courtiers. 14. Meeting a peasant seated by the roadside he asked him what he was doing there. 15. "I have come," said the peasant, "to see the king pass. 16. "If you will mount behind (*en croupe*)," said the king, wishing to have some sport with him, "I will take (*conduire*) you where the king is." 17. "How shall I be able to recognize the king?"

asked the peasant on-the-way (*chemin faisant*). 18. "When all [shall] have their heads bare," replied the horseman, "he will have his hat on (*être couvert*)." 19. Scarcely had the king said that than a number of knights appeared on the road. 20. Great was the surprise of the peasant when he noticed that they all took their hats off (*se découvrir*). 21. "Which is the king?" asked Henry of his companion. 22. "Zounds (*ma foi*)!" said the peasant, "it is you or I, for there are only the two of us with our hats on (we two who have (*pres. subj.*) our hats on the head)."

COMPOSITION 54.

Stories.

A Peasant's Honesty.—During the Thirty Years' War, while the French were making themselves masters¹ of a part of Germany, a French cavalry captain was ordered (183) to² go out foraging³. Not far from the valley where the troops were, he saw a poor hut. Approaching it, he found at the door an old man, whom he asked to³ indicate to him a field where he could have his horses graze. "In a moment," replied the old man. After a quarter of an hour's march, they reached a field of barley. "There is what we want," said the captain. "Wait a moment," answered his guide, "and I shall show you a field that will make up [to you] for your delay. At last they reached another barley field. The troop dismount⁵, and mow the grain. But the captain asks his guide why he had made his soldiers bring their horses so far, as the first field was better. "That is true, sir," responded the old man, simply, "but it was not mine."

Anecdote about Dumas.—One day a French count, worth millions⁶, but not at all well-read, yet desirous of making for himself a name in literature, wrote to Alexander Dumas to propose to him to³ write (make) a drama together. You will compose the drama alone, and I shall pay for all the expenses alone. Your name will figure beside⁷ mine, and you will have all the profits to indemnify you for your work, for I work only for glory. You and I would be able to do that together," he said in ending; "already I can congratulate you on the success of our work." "Sir," said Dumas in reply, "I am not accustomed to have a horse and a donkey hitched to my carriage. I must therefore renounce the honor that you have just proposed." The count replied: "Mr. Dumas, I take note of your refusal to³ unite our literary labors. You are free, I admit, not to³ understand the advantages they would confer on you, but in⁸ the future remember not to call me a horse."

¹s'emparer. ²aller au fourage. ³de. ⁴à l'instant. ⁵mettre pied à terre. ⁶\$7, 5. ⁷à côté de. ⁸à.

XVI. TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE (TEMPS DE L'INDICATIF).

1. THE PRESENT INDICATIVE (PRÉSENT DE L'INDICATIF).

215. *The Present Tense represents :*

1. What is in progress or in existence at the present time.

Jean lit le journal,
John reads the newspaper.

Ce garçon est heureux.
That boy is happy.

Jean lit les journaux depuis longtemps. John has been reading the newspapers for a long time.

NOTE.—I
certain phr
where in E

Il y a deu
Toronto
We have be
years.
Combien d
How long
are still

2. A p

C'était le
terreurs qu
pressés ; o
égérée (fra

3. An

Je pars ce
I leave this

4. A f

(shall) co

Si, whet

216. T

The Pas
The spher

217. T

action or
must alw
period of

J'ai parlé
I spoke
man.

NOTE.—
an immedi

218. T

occurring
(duration
is repres
ring an

a. Je sort
I was
wer
Cartha
Cartha

NOTE 1.

NOTE.—It will be observed in the last example that the Present must be used with certain phrases in French, if the action or state belongs to present as well as past time. where in English a Present Perfect is employed. Compare the following :

Il y a deux ans que nous demeurons à Toronto.
We have been living in Toronto for two years. (And are still living there).
 Combien de temps y a-t-il que vous lisez ?
How long have you been reading ? (You are still reading).

But: Nous avons demeuré deux ans à Toronto.
We lived two years in Toronto. (We live there no longer).
 Combien de temps avez-vous lu ?
How long did you read ? (You have ceased reading.)

2. A past, to give vivacity to the narrative :

C'était le soir d'une fête publique. ... Tout à coup (*suddenly*), une de ces inexplicables terreurs qui frappent de folle (*madness*) les multitudes s'abat (*descends*) sur les rangs pressés ; ou orie, on se précipite : les plus faibles trébuchent (*stumble*), et la foule égarée (*frantic*) les écrasent (*crush*) sous ses pieds convulsifs.

3. An immediate future :

Je pars ce soir à cinq heures.
I leave this evening at five.

Je suis à vous dans un instant.
I am at your service in a moment.

4. A future, after *si, if*: S'il viennent, faites-le-moi savoir. *If they (shall) come, send me word.*

Si, whether, may take the future : Je ne sais s'ils viendront.

2. THE PAST TENSES (TEMPS PASSES).

216. The Simple Past is represented in French by three tenses : (1) The *Passé indéfini*; (2) the *Imparfait*; (3) the *Passé défini*. The sphere of each of these tenses it is important to understand.

217. The Past Indefinite may be used to represent any simple action or event that has occurred in any time whatever in the past. It must always be employed to denote the taking place of actions in a period of time not yet entirely elapsed ; as, this year, this morning.

J'ai parlé hier à l'homme. <i>I spoke yesterday to the man.</i>	J'ai parlé à l'homme. <i>I have spoken to the man.</i>	J'ai parlé ce matin à l'homme. <i>I spoke this morning to the man.</i>
--	---	---

NOTE.—As the Present for the Future, so the Past Indefinite is sometimes used for an immediate Future Perfect : Attendez, j'ai fini (*for* : j'aurai fini) dans un instant.

218. The Imperfect adds to the notion of an action or state occurring or existing in the past, the notion of the (a) incompleteness (duration) or (b) frequency of such action or state. The action or state is represented either (a) as permanent, or else, if transient, (b) as occurring an unlimited number of times (habitually).

a. Je sortais au moment que vous entriez. <i>I was going out at the moment you were coming in.</i> Carthage était sur le bord de la mer. <i>Carthage was on the sea-coast.</i>	b. Dès que je me levais, j'allais me promener. <i>As soon as I used to rise, I used to go for a walk.</i> J'étais toujours heureux quand vous étiez chez nous. <i>I always was (used to be) happy when you were at our house.</i>
---	--

NOTE 1.—With phrases introduced by *il y a, à peine, depuis*, the French would

also use the Imperfect to denote an action *in progress* in the Past, though English usage demands the Pluperfect :

J'y étais à peine trois mois que....
I had been been there scarcely three months when....

Je n'étais que depuis trois jours à Athènes quand....
I had been in Athens but three days when....

NOTE 2.—The Imperfect may be used with *si* expressing a condition (according to rule, for the action is not represented as completed): *S'il venait, je le verrais.* But *si, whether*, may require the Imperf. Fut. (Conditional): *Je ne savais pas s'il viendrait.*

NOTE 3.—The Imperfect is often employed in introducing quotations, etc., to suggest that the quotation is general or else characteristic of its author: *Les femmes, disait Mlle de Soudéry, sont coquettes quand elles sont belles.*

219. The Past Definite represents an action or state as having occurred or existed in some definite period entirely elapsed. *Yesterday, last week, last month, last year*, etc., would be definite past periods in the sense of the rule; while *to-day, this week, this month*, etc., would not be. (See 217.)

Je lui parlai hier. Je lui parlai l'année dernière. (But: Je lui ai parlé ce matin.)

NOTE.—It will be noticed that the sphere of the Past Indefinite and that of the Past Definite coincide as to definite past periods. *Je lui ai parlé hier; je lui parlai hier.* In general the Past Indefinite is much more frequently employed than the Past Definite. The former is to be preferred in colloquial language; the latter is more customary in narration, especially in historical narration.

220. The Imperfect and the Past Definite in Narration. The Imperfect (1) fills in the description, while the Past Definite (2) narrates the successive events.

"Les clochers des villages où les matelots s'étaient nés et qu'ils reconnaissaient au loin dans les campagnes, les remplissaient d'allégresse. Mais quand le vaisseau entra dans le port et qu'ils virent sur les quais leurs amis et leurs parents qui leur tendaient les mains, il fut impossible d'en retenir un seul à bord."

221. The Plus-que-parfait and Passé antérieur.—These perfect tenses correspond to the English Pluperfect. The *Plus-que-parfait* is used *much more frequently than the Passé antérieur*. Like the Imperfect, the former must be used to denote habitual or incomplete actions or states (218). The *Passé antérieur* is found with words that indicate some definite point of time: *à peine.... que. scarcely.... when; aussitôt (dès) que, as soon as; quand (lorsque), when; ne.... pas plus tôt, no sooner, etc.*

Dès que je lui avais parlé*, il sortait.
Dès que je m'étais levé*, je sortais.

Dès que je lui eus parlé†, il sortit.
Dès que je me fus levé†, je sortis.

*Habitual action.

†Completed, definite action.

THE FUTURE (FUTUR).

222. Futur. The Future tense in English corresponds with the French *Futur*, except that with certain conjunctions in English the Present tense is used with a future sense, while in French the Future is with reason required.

Aussitôt que je le verrai, je lui dirai cela. | Parlez, tant que vous voudrez.
As soon as I see him, I shall tell him that. | Tant que le monde durera.

The Future
Tu ne tu
shall thou

223. F.
for the co
Aussitôt qu

224. F.
use of th
Imperfect
the futur
latter rega

Compar

Je suis s

J'étais s

Il est cer

Il était c

Il jure q

Il jura q

225. Co
ally are ex
were rich
express co
perfect tel
The claus
Anterior
Imperfect

a. Si je sui

S'il a fai

S'il a fa

vou

If he b

do

NOTE 1.—
in the Impe
Quand (m

NOTE 2.—
really the F
when the o

"On e

"La p

"Si les

Tit

Inverted

*The err
Mood in F
sarily in th
fais, louez
the Pres.
Moreover
J'étais sûr
position in

The *Futur présent* represents an Imperative in such sentences as:

Tu ne tueras pas. Thou shalt not kill. Tu travailleras six jours. Six days shalt thou labor.

223. *Futur antérieur*. Similary we employ the *Futur antérieur* for the completed action:

Aussitôt que je l'aurai vu, je reviendrai. As soon as I have seen him, I shall return.

(THE SO-CALLED CONDITIONAL.)

224. *Futur imparfait* and *Futur plus-que-parfait*. The use of the Future and Future Anterior differs only from the use of Imperfect and Pluperfect Future in this; while the former tenses regard the future action or state from the point of view of the present, the latter regard the action or state from the point of view of the past.

Compare:

Je suis sûr qu'il viendra. I am sur. that he will come.

J'étais sûr qu'il viendrait. I was sure that he would come.

Il est certain qu'il le fera. It is certain that he will do it.

Il était certain qu'il le ferait. It was certain that he would do it.

Il jure qu'il ira. He promises that he will go.

Il jura qu'il irait. He promised that he would go.

225. *Conditioned Clauses*. Hypothetical actions or states naturally are expressed by past tenses both in English and French (cf.: If I were rich, *Si j'étais riche*; If I did that, *Si je faisais cela*); though to express conditions of fact both languages may use present or present perfect tenses (If he is here, *S'il est ici*; If he has done, *S'il a fait cela*). The clauses dependent on the present would take (a) the Present or Anterior Future, while those dependent on the past would take (b) the Imperfect or Pluperfect Future.

a. Si je suis riche, je serai heureux.

S'il a fait cela, il sera puni.

S'il a fait cela, il aura fait plus que vous.

If he has done that, he will have done more than you.

b. Si j'étais riche, je serais heureux.

S'il faisait cela, il serait puni.

S'il avait fait cela, il aurait fait plus que vous.

If he had done that, he would have done more than you.

NOTE 1.—With *quand*, *quand même*, even if, the conditioning clause is also in the Imperfect or Pluperfect Future.

Quand (même) j'irais, je ne le verrais pas. Though I should go, I should not see him.

NOTE 2.—The Second Form of the Pluperfect Future (*Conditionnel passé*), which is really the Pluperfect Subjunctive, is frequently employed for the First Form, especially when the condition is not expressed.

"On eût dit un portrait de ces vieux héros: ... à Versailles."

"La présence de Robert eût été pour lui une garantie."

"Si les Titans eussent chassé du ciel Jupiter, les poètes eussent chassé les Titans."

Inverted: "Eût-il été plus fort, il fût tombé de même."

Had he been stronger, he would have fallen all the same.

*The error in looking upon the Imperfect and Pluperfect Future as the Conditional Mood in French is manifest when we observe that the conditioned clause is not necessarily in that mood at all. In: *S'il vient, je le verrai*, we have a Future; in: *Si je le fais, louez-moi*, we have an Imperative; in: *Je veux qu'il le fasse, s'il vient*, we have the Pres. Subj.; in: *J'e voudrais qu'il le fit, s'il venait*, we have an Imperf. Subj. Moreover a sentence in the 'Conditional' is not necessarily conditional at all. *J'étais sûr qu'il viendrait*. Its formation from an Indicative tense likewise marks its position in the conjugation of the verb.

226. The Futures in Euphemisms.—From a feeling of respect, deference, reserve, or from a desire to avoid harshness, the various Futures are sometimes employed euphemistically for present or past tenses.

Il le lui aura dit.

He told it him, I suppose.

Si vous n'avez pas réussi, c'est que vous n'aurez pas étudié.
If you have not succeeded, the reason is because you (probably) have not studied.

Je voudrais bien savoir cela.
I should like to know that.

Oserais-je vous demander cela ?
Might I (dare) ask you that ?

NOTE 1.—Allied to this use, is the use made of the Imperfect or Pluperfect Futures by a speaker who wishes not to commit himself to the truth of statements alleged.

Selon ce qu'on dit, la guerre serait déjà déclarée.

According to what they say, war has already been declared.

XVII. THE IMPERATIVE (IMPÉRATIF).

227. The Imperative is the mood of command. It has only three forms, similar to the corresponding parts of the Present Indicative. (With *être*, 170; *avoir*, 171; *savoir*, 199, 26; and sometimes *vouloir*, 199, 29, the Imperative forms have been taken from the Subjunctive.)

parle, speak (thou); parlons, let us speak; parlez, speak (you, ye).

The forms for the 1st sing. (rare) and 3rd persons are only forms of the subjunctive.

Que je ne vous retienne pas. (Je veux, j'ordonne) Qu'il parle, Qu'ils parlent.
Let me not detain you. Let him speak, let them speak.

NOTE 1.—Verbs ending in a vowel in the 2nd pers. sing. Imperative, add a euphonic *s* before the vowel of *en* and *y*: Cherches-en. Vas-y.

NOTE 2.—The 1st pers. pl. is often employed with the force of a 1st sing.; when, however, any parts in agreement with the understood subject must remain singular:

Tâchons de me remettre. Let me try to compose myself.

Voyons que j'examine votre langue. Let me see till I examine your tongue.

THÈME 55.

Translate. Comment on the tense of the verbs.

1. Dans la leçon d'hier nous avons eu quelques contes. Voulez-vous que je vous en fasse d'autres. 2. Veuillez nous faire ce plaisir; nous en serons charmés. 3. Vous aimez les contes mieux que les leçons, c'est évident. 4. Nous avons des leçons tous les jours, mais il y a longtemps que nous n'avons eu de contes. 5. Si vous manquez la leçon, comment pourrez-vous apprendre le français. 6. Faites-nous des histoires en français; nous apprendrons beaucoup en les écoutant. 7. Eh bien, nous nous divertirons aussitôt que nous aurons fini nos devoirs. 8. Il faut d'abord faire la leçon; puis, s'il y a du temps, nous aurons les contes. 9. Prenez vos cahiers, écrivez les phrases qui suivent. 10. Si je pars demain, je vous le ferai savoir; si vous partez, faites-le-moi savoir. 11. La vie, disait Socrate, ne doit être que la méditation de la mort. 12. Dans l'âge d'or les hommes vivaient dans l'innocence et le bonheur. 13. Le paresseux travaille-t-il, les moments lui paraissent des heures; s'amuse-t-il les heures lui paraissent des moments. 14. L'Angleterre compte que chaque homme fera son devoir. 15. Les gardes disent en avoir vu se glisser trois. D'autres disent en avoir vu sept!... de sorte qu'il pourrait bien n'y avoir personne. 16. L'étymologie, disait Voltaire, est une science où les voyelles ne sont rien et les consonnes fort peu de chose. 17. Ruth répondit: Ne me prie point

de te la
je mour
la main
1608 le
Huron
tard au
maison
a dit :
les phra
que deu
Pour fin
l'un tir
significa

24. "jamais
chèvres
même f
cassaien
dans la
loup les
chèvres

1. Y
what I
tell the
means,
them.
ber tha
it is a
lated w
will be
well to
his sol
treat, l
Berwic
soldier
marsh
genera
a funer
One of
ironica
much t
Spania
a little
a stran
who w
stone,
frozen
not to
claime
tie-up

de te laisser ; car j'irai où tu iras, et je demeurerai où tu demeureras ; je mourrai où tu mourras, et j'y serai ensevelie. 18. Diogène tendait la main à une statue pour s'accoutumer, disait-il, au refus. 19. En 1608 le Français Champlain vint en Amérique, découvrit les lacs Huron et Érié et fonda la colonie du Canada que Louis XIV céda plus tard aux Anglais. 20. Il y a des hommes qui mettraient le feu à la maison de leur voisin pour se faire cuire un œuf à la coque. 21. Un sage a dit : Les crimes secrets ont les dieux pour témoins. 22. Expliquez les phrases : Battez le fer pendant qu'il est chaud, Un tiens vaut mieux que deux tu auras, Revenons à nos moutons, Passons au déluge. 23. Pour finir notre étude des temps de l'indicatif je vous lis deux passages, l'un tiré d'Alphonse Daudet, l'autre de Lamartine. Notez bien la signification des temps qu'on y emploie.

24. "Monsieur Seguin n'avait jamais eu de bonheur avec ses chèvres. Il les perdait toutes de la même façon : un beau matin elles cassaient leur corde, s'en allaient dans la montagne, et là-haut le loup les mangeait.... C'étaient des chèvres indépendantes."

25. "Le prieur salua l'étranger, caressa l'enfant et s'informa des circonstances qui les forçaient... à voyager à travers les routes détournées de l'Espagne. Colomb raconta sa vie obscure et déroula ses pensées au moine attentif."

EXERCISE 56.

1. You wish me to (that I) tell you some stories to-day? That is what I have been doing for a long time. Will you translate them if I tell them? We would translate them if they were easy. 3. That means, I suppose, that if they were not easy, you would not translate them. 4. We could not translate them if they were difficult. 5. Remember that Napoleon did not have in his dictionary the word "impossible"; it is a word that should not be found in yours. 6. You always translated well the sentences I read you. 7. They were easy, the stories will be difficult. 8. Even if they should be difficult, you would do well to (de) try them. Let us begin. 9. La Rochejaquelin said to his soldiers at the hour of battle, "If I advance, follow me; if I retreat, kill me; if I die, avenge me." 10. You remember that Marshal Berwick defeated (battre) the English and Spanish at Almanza. 11. A soldier once saluted the marshal in Spanish. 12. "Comrade," said the marshal to him, "where did you learn Spanish?" "At Almanza, general." 13. A professor of rhetoric was reading one day to his pupils a funeral sermon (oraison funèbre) on Marshal Turenne by Fléchier. 14. One of the scholars, struck by the beauties of the composition, said ironically to one of his comrades, "when shall you be able [en] to do as much?" 15. "When you are Turenne," replied the other. 16. A Spaniard who was travelling in Holland was spending a winter's day in a little village of (du) Brabant. 17. The dogs, which but rarely saw a stranger in the village barked and ran after him. 18. The Spaniard, who wished to frighten them, stooped (se baisser) in order to pick up a stone, [and] to throw it at them. 19. There had been a frost (it had frozen) and the stone stuck (tenir) so firmly (fortement) that he could not tear it away (arracher). 20. "The wretched country," he exclaimed, "where people let loose (lâcher) the dogs, and where they tie-up (attacher) the stones!"

COMPOSITION 57.

Stories.

1. Cortez, on¹ his return to Spain, was coldly received by the Emperor Charles V. One day he places himself suddenly before the monarch. "Who are you?" the emperor asks him in² a haughty tone. "The man who gave you more provinces than your ancestors [ne] left you cities," replied Cortez.

2. The arms of Germany, you know, are a two-headed³ eagle and those of the former⁴ republic of Venice a winged⁵ lion. An emperor of Germany asked an ambassador of Venice once what country winged lions came from. The ambassador, without hesitation, replied, "They come from the country where eagles have two heads."

3. Frederick II., after his defeat at Kollin, meeting one of his soldiers whose face was quite scarred⁶, said to him roughly: "In what tavern did you have yourself slashed that way?" "In a tavern, sire," replied the soldier; "where you paid the reckoning⁷."

4. A wood-cutter went one day to the wood. He looked on all sides with an embarrassed air, as if he were seeking something. Whereupon⁸ the trees, with a curiosity that some other creatures possess, asked him with eagerness what he was looking for. The wood-cutter replied that he needed a bit of wood to make a handle for¹ his axe. The good trees deliberated, and finally it was resolved with² a unanimous voice¹¹ that the woodcutter should have a piece of ash as good as they could find in the forest. Scarcely had he received it and adjusted the handle to his axe, when he began to cut [to] right and [to] left, so that in¹² time he felled the finest and largest trees in the forest. It is said that then the oak spoke thus to the ash: Brother, there is the fruit of our foolish generosity.

Shall we say with La Fontaine, "We cry in vain¹³, ingratitude will not be any the (en) less in¹⁴ fashion," or with Tourgueneff, "Since the world has been a world—and it is a long time since then¹⁵—Gratitude and Beneficence have never met?"

¹a. ²de. ³See 79, note. ⁴ci-devant (invariable). ⁵volant (flying). ⁶couturé. ⁷balafre. ⁸ainsi. ⁹écot. ¹⁰sur quoi. ¹¹commune voix. Voix commune means an ordinary, vulgar voice. ¹²avec le. ¹³Use avoir beau crier. ¹⁴à la. ¹⁵de cela.

XVIII. USE OF THE INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE (EMPLOI DE L'INDICATIF ET DU SUBJONCTIF).

227. The Subjunctive mood in French is so subtle, so admirable: as means of expression, its use is so different from English use, that it is of the utmost importance to understand its fundamental character.

In the sentences: (a) (*I know*) that he is here and (b) (*I wish*) he were here, the fundamental distinction between the Indicative and Subjunctive appears. In (a) *he is here*, we express what we regard as a fact: in (b) *he were here*, we are conscious of a difference between the assertion of his being here and the fact of his being here. This consciousness of difference between our assertion and the objective reality of the asser-

tion is
the ap
Com

In a
doing
sarily
concep
what l

Com

In a
known
snake
come,

reality

This
pretati
be em

228.
would
we nee

KNOWING
vie
BELIEVIN
dre
HOPING
DECLAR
THINKIN
etc.

229.

a. Il es
Il semb

Il paral

230
of it,
fact;
differ
quent

a. Je c
J'es
Je a

tion is the basis of almost all uses of the Subjunctive in French. Remark the application of the principle.

Compare : (a) *Je crois qu'il fait cela, I believe that he is doing that,* with (b) *J'ordonne qu'il fasse cela, I order that he do (him to do) that.*

In *a*, we assert what is, according to our belief, objective fact,—*he is doing it*; in *b*, we do not mean *he is doing that*, or that he will necessarily do it,—the thought of his doing that remains as a subjective conception, which may never be realized in fact, for he may never do what I order.

Compare : (a) *Je sais qu'il est ici, I know he is here.*

(b) *Croyez-vous qu'il vienne, Do you think he will come*

In *a*, we state by the Indicative that *he is here*, and that the fact is known to the speaker; in *b*, although our sentence is affirmative, we make no assertion that *he will come*; we are conscious that *he may not come*, which consciousness of difference between the assertion and the reality is manifested by the Subjunctive.

This fundamental distinction seized, it becomes a mere matter of interpretation as to when the Indicative or when the Subjunctive mood is to be employed.

I.

228. *a.* Subordinate statements would be presented by us as facts if we used the verbs of :

KNOWING : *Je sais qu'il vient (est venu, viendra).*

BELIEVING : *Je crois qu'il vient (viendra).*

HOPING : *J'espère qu'il viendra.*

DECLARING : *Je dis qu'il viendra.*

THINKING : *Je pense que cela est vrai, etc.*

b. Subordinate statements would show merely a subjective conception of the action after the verbs of :

FEARING : *Je crains qu'il ne vienne.*

COMMANDING : *J'ordonne qu'il vienne.*

WISHING : *Je veux qu'il vienne.*

DOUBTING, DENYING : *Je doute qu'il vienne.*

PREVENTING : *J'empêche qu'il ne vienne, etc.*

II.

229. So also with Impersonal verbs :

a. Il est certain (sûr, clair) qu'il vient.
Il semble que cela est vrai.

Il paraît qu'il vient.

b. Il faut (il est nécessaire) qu'il vienne.
or Il semblait que je sentisse mon cœur s'épurer. (To express doubt or reserve as to the assertion.)

Il convient (il est juste, etc.) qu'il vienne.

III.

230. If we question the truth of a statement, or if we deny the truth of it, such statement in general cannot be presented as a statement of fact; the question or the denial in general admits the consciousness of difference between the assertion and the fact. The Subjunctive consequently is usually employed after Interrogations and Denials.

a. Je crois qu'il est ici.
J'espère qu'il viendra.
Je dis que cela est vrai, etc.

b. Croyez-vous qu'il soit ici?
Espérez-vous qu'il vienne.
Je ne dis pas que cela soit vrai, etc.

NOTE.—The use of the Indicative in subordinate statements after Interrogations is very frequent. The cases in which the Indicative would be employed are :

a. Questions about statements of fact :

Savez-vous qui **est** cet homme ? *Do you know what that man is ?*
Croyez-vous qu'il **viendra** ? *Do you believe he will come ? (I believe it.)*

b. Questions that are merely rhetorical :

N'est-il pas évident que c'**est** la même chose ?
Is it not evident that it is the same thing ? (It certainly is evident, etc.)
Où avez-vous vu que les gens ruinés **ont** des amis ?
Where have you seen ruined men with friends ? (They have none.)

IV.

231. With adjective and adverbial sentences (a) the Indicative indicates the *result that has been attained or that certainly will be attained*, while (b) the Subjunctive expresses a *result desired, sought after*.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>a. J'ai trouvé une retraite où je suis tranquille.
J'irai dans une retraite où je serai tranquille.
J'ai un dictionnaire qui contient mille pages.
J'ai trouvé quelqu'un qui peut me rendre ce service.</p> | <p>b. Je cherche une retraite où je sois tranquille.
J'irai dans une retraite où je sois tranquille.
Je cherche un dictionnaire qui contienne mille pages.
Je cherche quelqu'un qui puisse me rendre ce service.</p> |
|--|--|

V.

232. In the sentences depending on superlatives, the fundamental principle is still to be seen. When I say: *I shall lend you the best book that I have*, I do not mean to claim that *I have the best book*. Yet on a strict analysis of the sentence that inference—if the Indicative force of the verb be present—must be drawn ; for the relative is by substitution *the best book*, and the sentence must consequently stand: *I shall lend you the best book which (best book) I have*. This is obviously not the sense the speaker wishes to convey. Hence in French the Subjunctive interposes for the purpose of modifying what otherwise would be the absolute force of the superlative.

C'est le meilleur homme que je connais. Néron est le premier empereur qui ait persécuté l'église.	Je suis le seul qui vous connaisse. C'est là la moindre récompense qu'on lui doive.
--	--

NOTE.—The Indicative mood is, however, frequently found after Superlatives, when, according to its nature, it expresses positive fact, or statements that the speaker puts forward as statements of fact.

Vouloir ce que Dieu veut est la **seule** science qui vous **met** en repos.
To wish what God wishes is the only science that gives us tranquility.

VI.

233. With verbs that denote emotion—pain, joy, astonishment, fear, etc., the subordinate sentence containing the cause of the emotion naturally falls into the Subjunctive, as something looked upon for the moment from an entirely subjective point.

Je m'étonne qu'il soit ici. Je suis bien aise qu'il soit ici.	Je crains qu'il ne soit ici. Je suis fâché qu'il ne soit pas ici.
--	--

Often
ceded
tory of

Êtes-
Je m

234.
princip

With
either
fact, or
tions :

a. Il s'e
m
Il ag
sa

235.
ally be
conjunct

à mesur
in prop
ainsi qu
as well
après c
after.
aussitô
as soon
autant
as mu
comm
as.
attenc
consic
peut-
perha
depul
since

*S

23
to a
quan
acco
Subj

Often the dependent sentence with a verb of feeling, etc., is preceded by *ce*, when it requires the Indicative, being merely explanatory of the substantive pronoun that precedes.

Êtes-vous fâché de **ce** que vous êtes en retard.
Je me plains de **ce** que vous êtes en retard.

VII.

234. The Conjunctions will be found to follow closely the general principle.

With the conjunctions *de manière que*, *de sorte que*, *tellement que*, either (a) the Indicative may be employed to make statements of positive fact, or (b) the Subjunctive to make statements of subjective conceptions :

a. Il s'est conduit de manière que tout le monde **est** satisfait.
Il agira de sorte que tout le monde **sera** satisfait.

b. Il faut se conduire de manière que tout le monde **soit** satisfait.
Il faut agir de sorte que tout le monde **soit** satisfait.

235. a. Assertions would habitually be presented as facts after the conjunctions :

b. Assertions would habitually show merely a subjective conception of the action after the conjunctions :

à mesure que,
in proportion as.

ainsi que,
as well as.

après que,
after.

aussitôt que,
as soon as.

autant que,
as much as.

comme,
as.

attendu que,
considering that.

peut-être que,
perhaps.

depuis que,
since (of time).

dès que,
as soon as.

lorsque,
when.

si,*
if.

parce que,
because.

pendant que,
while.

quand,
when.

puis que,
since (of reason).

tandis que,
whilst.

vu que,
seeing that.

à moins que,
unless.

afin que,
(in order) that.

avant que,
before.

{ quoique,
bien que,
encore que,
though.

de peur (crainte) que
lest (for fear that).

jusqu' à ce que,
till.

loin que,
far from.

non (pas) que,
not that.

pour que,
(in order) that.

pourvu que,
provided that.

quel... que,
whatever.

qui... que,
whoever.

quoi que,
whatever.

sans que,
without.

si... que,
however.

soit que,
whether.

supposé que,
supposing that.

*Si may take the Subjunctive with pluperfect tenses.

236. Que in place of other Conjunctions.—As *que* is used very frequently to avoid the repetition of other conjunctions, such as *bien que*, *depuis que*, *parce que*, *quand*, the Indicative or the Subjunctive will be found after *que* thus used, according as the conjunction for which it is substituted takes the Indicative or the Subjunctive. But *que* holding the place of *si* is followed always by the Subjunctive.

Quand on est riche et qu'on est belle, on ne l'ignore pas.

Quoique vous soyez riche et que vous soyez belle, vous n'êtes pas aimée.

S'il revenait et qu'il vous dit cela, vous seriez fort embarrassé.

XIX. USE OF THE TENSES OR THE SUBJUNCTIVE (EMPLOI DES TEMPS DU SUBJONCTIF).

237. The use of the tenses in the Subjunctive corresponds closely to that of the tenses of the Indicative. It must be kept in mind, however, that as there is no Future form for the Subjunctive, the Present and Past Subjunctive do duty for the Future and Future Perfect, while the Imperfect and Pluperfect are used for the Imperfect and Pluperfect Future (Present and Perfect Conditional).

Je crains qu'il n'aille pas.
I fear he will not go.

Je crains qu'il ne soit parti avant vous.
I fear he will be gone before you.

Je craignais qu'il n'allât pas.
I feared he would not go.

Je craignais qu'il ne fût parti avant moi.
I feared he would be gone before you.

* The use of *ne* after expressions of fear, etc., is explained in 264, 3, a.

238. Conditioned Clauses Subjunctive tenses by this two-fold use can express conditioned clauses in the same manner as the Indicative tenses.

I feared that he would do it if he came.
Je craignais qu'il ne le fit s'il venait.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN OPTATIVE SENTENCES.

239. The use of the Subjunctive in optative sentences, with the governing verb understood, is quite frequent.

Ainsi soit-il.
So be it.

Dieu soit loué.
God be praised.

Vive le roi !
(Long) live the king !

Puissiez-vous être heureux.
May you be happy.

THÈME 58.

Translate. Comment on the mood and tense of the verbs.

1. Nous commençons aujourd'hui la difficile mais intéressante étude du subjonctif. Je regrette que tous les élèves ne soient pas présents. 2. Savez-vous où est M^{lle} A ? C'est dommage qu'elle ne soit pas ici. 3. Expliquez, aussi vite que possible, l'emploi du subjonctif dans les phrases que je vais vous lire. 4. Je ferai ce voyage à condition que vous viendrez avec moi. 5. Faites aux autres ce que vous voudriez qu'on vous fit. 6. Ce que vous dites là prouve qu'il est riche mais ne prouve pas qu'il soit honnête. 7. Quelque puissants qu'ils soient je ne les crains pas. 8. L'homme est un étrange animal ; je ne suis pas le premier qui l'ait dit. 9. Quels que soient les hommes il faut vivre avec eux. 10. Je suppose que les hommes soient éternels sur la terre. 11. Croyez-vous que l'âme est immortelle ? 12. Donnez-moi des livres que je puisse lire, des conseils que je puisse suivre. 13. S'il est vrai qu'Homère ait fait Virgile, c'est son plus bel ouvrage. 14. Je ne nie pas qu'il ait raison. 15. Vous avez fait de sorte que votre ami est irrité ; faites de sorte qu'il soit content. 16. C'est la plus belle île, écrit Colomb, que jamais l'œil de l'homme ait contemplée. 17. Quoi que vous écriviez, évitez la bassesse. 18. Il aurait fallu que les livres fussent vendus. 19. Il n'y a que les grands cœurs qui sachent combien il y a de bonheur à pardonner. 20. Qui eût pu seulement pensé que les années eussent dû manquer à une jeunesse qui semblait si vive. 21. Les mortels quels qu'ils soient sont égaux devant la mort. 22. Loin que

mon cam
ne crois
24. J'écr
manquer
partira.
27. Il n'
une posi
dain, il
rien. 29
nous pu
31. Socra
le lui per
ne la dis
plus gran
34. L'Ar
voyez-vo
qu' à ce
thème qu
fasse obs

* Que att

1. I an
all attent
very well
mé them.
is not y
have ever
[that] yo
you think
doubt th
astonishi
difficult.
taphysic
that met
wish [th
I should
child. 1
the Indi
tive with
its raiso
Subjunc
philosoph
not say
sentence
practice
ences to
it becom
whatever
may be,
I do n
Labor i

mon camarade soit savant, il devient de jour en jour plus ignorant. 23. Je ne crois pas qu'il eût agi de la sorte, s'il en eût prévu les conséquences. 24. J'écirai à mon ami malade, dussé-je (quand même je devrais) manquer la classe. 25. Qu'il perde son procès ou qu'il le gagne, il partira. 26. Voulez-vous qu'on dise du bien de vous ? n'en dites point. 27. Il n'est guère de père qui prétende que son fils ne doive pas occuper une position supérieure à la sienne. 28. Par ma foi ! dit M. Jourdain, il y a plus de quarante ans que je dis de la prose sans que j'en aie rien. 29. Étudions pendant que vous sommes jeunes, c'est le mieux que nous puissions faire. 30. Attendez à me louer que* je l'aie mérité. 31. Socrate disait adieu tous les soirs à ses amis, ne sachant pas si la mort le lui permettrait le lendemain. 32. Si tu veux qu'une chose soit secrète, ne la dis pas ; si tu ne veux pas qu'on la sache, ne la fais pas. 33. Le plus grand mal qu'on puisse souhaiter à l'avare, c'est qu'il vive longtemps. 34. L'Angleterre compte que chaque homme fera son devoir. 35. Ne voyez-vous pas qu'il est quatre heures ? Défendez-vous qu'on sorte jusqu'à ce que la leçon soit terminée ? 36. C'est la dernière phrase du thème que je viens de traduire. 37. C'en est assez. Sortons avant qu'il fasse obscur.

* *Que* after *attendre* has the force of *till*.

EXERCISE 59.

1. I am waiting till you are ready, Miss Louisa. As soon as we are all attentive we shall begin. 2. I fear I have not prepared my lesson very well to-day, sir. I trust that if I make mistakes you will pardon me them. 3. Why should you need (*falloir*) to make mistakes ? That is not your habit. 4. To-day's lesson is the most difficult that I have ever studied. 5. I am surprised at your saying that ; [it] may be [that] you are mistaken, though you say that it is very difficult. 6. Do you think, Charles, with Miss Louisa, that the lesson is difficult ? 7. I doubt that there is a more difficult one in French grammar. 8. It is astonishing that you are both agreed (*d'accord*) that the Subjunctive is difficult. I do not think it is. 9. I fear I do not understand very well metaphysics (*la métaphysique*). 10. You take for maxim, don't you, Charles, that metaphysics are not suited (*convenir à*) to children ? 11. I do not wish [that, etc.] you to think that that is what I mean. If I said that I should condemn myself. I do not wish anyone to call me a child. But is there no Subjunctive that has no metaphysics ? 12. It is the Indicative that you desire, perhaps. In-order-to use the Subjunctive with intelligence it is necessary [that, etc.] for one to understand its *raison d'être* ; without that, I do not believe that one can use the Subjunctive with certainty. 13. I fear I must turn (*se faire*) a German philosopher in order that I may continue my study of French. 14. Do not say that—although you could become something worse—for your sentences show that you understand all you are saying. 15. It is practice that is wanted. 16. Then give us, please, some difficult sentences to translate before our lesson is over. 17. Make haste then, lest it become late. 18. Translate, Charles : I doubt that you will succeed whatever you do. 19. Whoever you are, whatever your talents may be, however powerful (so powerful as he, etc.) your friends may be, I do not believe that you will succeed, unless you learn to labor. Labor is the only means that one has in-order-to succeed. 20. It is

better for [that etc.] one to have much industry and few talents than many talents and little industry. 21. It is doubtful that the ancients were more industrious than the moderns. 22. The fear that he would not study has always tormented me. 23. As long as people are working at the social edifice, the inhabitants are badly lodged. 24. When Socrates was having a house built his neighbors criticised it; each judged that it would be too small. "Would (might-please) to heaven," cried the philosopher, "that I could fill it with true friends." 25. Shortly before Socrates died some one came to him, wept, and said, "Then you will die innocent?" "Would you prefer me to (that I) die guilty?" asked the philosopher. 26. A rich man is said to have complained that Providence had not had sleep sold in the market. 27. A lawyer once died very poor, and some one wondered that a man of law (*droit*) should have so few effects. "But he had few causes!" answered another.

COMPOSITION 60.

Louis XIV. and his Madrigal.

I must¹ write you a little story, which is quite true and which will amuse you. The king has lately² been making verses; MM. de Saint-Aignan et Dangeau are teaching him how he must¹ set about it³. He made the other day a little madrigal that he himself did not find any too pretty. One morning he said to Marshal de Grammont: "Marshal⁴, I wish⁵ you would read this little madrigal, and would tell me if you have ever seen so silly a one: because people know that for-some-time² I have been fond of verses, there is not a day that I do not receive some of all kinds." The marshal, after having read, said to the king: "Sire⁶, your majesty judges⁷ all things divinely well: it is true that that-is⁸ the most foolish and most ridiculous madrigal that I have ever seen." The king began⁹ to laugh, and said to him: "Is it not so¹⁰ that the man who made it is very silly¹¹?" "Sir, it is impossible to give him an[y] other name." "Well¹²!" said the king, "I am delighted that you have spoken to me so honestly¹³ about it: I¹⁴ made it." "Ah, sire, what treason! Let your majesty give it back to me; I have read it too quickly." "No, marshal, first thoughts are always the most natural." The king laughed¹⁵ much at this folly, and everybody thinks that that is⁸ the most cruel thing that one can do to an old courtier. [As] for me, who always like making¹⁶ reflections, I should like the king to make some on-that-point¹⁷ and judge how far he comes (how much there is lacking¹⁸ that he) from ever knowing¹⁹ the truth.

¹falloir. ²depuis peu. ³s'y prendre. ⁴Use the polite address: monsieur le maréchal. ⁵Say: wish that you read, etc. ⁶sire. ⁷juger de. ⁸voilà. ⁹se mettre à. ¹⁰vrai. ¹¹fat. ¹²eh bien. ¹³bonnement. ¹⁴151, e. ¹⁵rire de. ¹⁶Say: to make. ¹⁷là-dessus. ¹⁸en falloir. ¹⁹connaître.

XX. THE INFINITIVE (DE L'INFINITIF).

1. THE BARE INFINITIVE.

240. The bare Infinitive in French is used:

a. As subject or predicate nominative:

Trop parler nuit.
Too much speaking does harm.

Adieu, te quitter, c'est mourir.
Farewell, to leave thee is to die.

b. As a o
(1) As in En

apercevoir,
devoir,
écouter,
entendre,
faire,
falloir,
laisser,
oser,
pouvoir,
regarder,
voir,
vouloir,

(For the m
auxiliaire

NOTE 1.—
infinitive w
infinitive:

Il aime mie

NOTE 2.—
meditate on

Il p

c. In app

Naitre,

d. In vag

Voir page
See page

241. a.

that deno
tive, to d

s'abaisser,
s'accorder,
aider,
s'appliquer
apprendre,
s'appreter,
s'attendre,
avoir,
avoir peine,
chercher,
concourir,

Also afte
hair, hate;
tarry.

Je ne m'ab
I shall not

NOTE.—1

Je
I

b. As a complement to certain verbs :

(1) As in English after :

apercevoir,	<i>perceive.</i>
devoir,	<i>must, should.</i>
écouter,	<i>hear (listen).</i>
entendre,	<i>hear.</i>
faire,	<i>make (have).</i>
falloir,	<i>must.</i>
laisser,	<i>let.</i>
oser,	<i>dare.</i>
pouvoir,	<i>can.</i>
regarder,	<i>watch (look at).</i>
voir,	<i>see.</i>
vouloir,	<i>will, wish.</i>

(For the most part model auxiliaries.)

(2) After verbs of motion :

accourir,	<i>hasten.</i>
aller,	<i>go.</i>
courir,	<i>run.</i>
descendre,	<i>descend.</i>
envoyer,	<i>send.</i>
mener,	<i>lead.</i>
rentrer,	<i>re-enter.</i>
retourner,	<i>return.</i>
revenir,	<i>come back.</i>
venir,	<i>come.</i>

But: venir de, *to have just*;
venir à, *to happen to.*

(3) After :

avouer,	<i>confess.</i>
croire,	<i>think, believe.</i>
daigner,	<i>deign.</i>
désirer (or de),	<i>desire.</i>
espérer (or de),	<i>hope.</i>
s'imaginer,	<i>imagine.</i>
paraître,	<i>seem.</i>
préférer,	<i>prefer.</i>
prétendre,	<i>intend, pretend.</i>
se rappeler,	<i>recollect.</i>
(or de)	
reconnaître,	<i>acknowledge.</i>
sembler,	<i>seem.</i>
savoir,	<i>know how to.</i>
souhaiter,	<i>wish.</i>

NOTE 1.—*aimer mieux*, *to prefer*, *valoir mieux*, *to be better*, take the bare infinitive when one infinitive follows, but after *que* they usually take *de* with a second infinitive :Il aime mieux rester ici que d'aller là. *He prefers staying here to going there.*NOTE 2.—*Penser* in the sense of *intend* takes the bare infinitive ; meaning *to meditate on*, *penser* takes à :

Il pense partir à cinq heures. | Il pense à partir.

c. In appositions of the nature of the following :—

Naître, souffrir, mourir : Voilà notre histoire en trois mots.

d. In vague commands, as in foot-notes, advertisements, instead of the Imperative :

Voir page 32.

Pour conditions s'adresser à

See page 32.

Edouard Bernard,

Rue St. Joseph, 7, Québec.

2. THE INFINITIVE WITH À.

241. a. The primary meaning of à is *direction towards*. Hence verbs that denote *Striving or Tendency* will be followed by à before the infinitive, to denote the object, purpose, destination of the action.

s'abaisser,	<i>stoop.</i>	consentir,	<i>consent.</i>	exciter,	<i>excite.</i>
s'accorder,	<i>agree.</i>	conspirer,	<i>conspire.</i>	se fatiguer,	<i>weary o.s.</i>
aider,	<i>aid.</i>	contribuer,	<i>contribute.</i>	instruire,	<i>instruct.</i>
s'appliquer	<i>apply o.s.</i>	convier,	<i>invite.</i>	inviter,	<i>invite.</i>
apprendre,	<i>learn.</i>	se déterminer,	<i>rescue.</i>	mettre,	<i>put.</i>
s'appréter,	<i>prepare o.s.</i>	employer,	<i>employ.</i>	se mettre,	<i>begin.</i>
s'attendre,	<i>expect.</i>	encourager,	<i>encourage.</i>	montrer,	<i>show.</i>
avoir,	<i>have.</i>	engager,	<i>induce.</i>	persévérer,	<i>persevere.</i>
avoir peine,	<i>have difficulty.</i>	enseigner,	<i>teach.</i>	pousser,	<i>urge.</i>
chercher,	<i>seek.</i>	essayer (or de) try,	<i>endeavor.</i>	réussir,	<i>succeed.</i>
concourir,	<i>co-operate.</i>			servir,	<i>serve.</i>

Also after : *aimer, like* ; *coûter, cost* ; *se divertir, amuse o.s.* ; *s'entendre, be expert* ; *haïr, hate* ; *se plaire, delight* ; *s'obstiner, persist* ; *prendre plaisir, take pleasure* ; *tarder, tarry.*Je ne m'abaisserai point à me justifier.
*I shall not stoop to justify myself.*Aidez-le à descendre.
Help him down.

NOTE.—Être, not used impersonally, usually takes à.

Je suis à écrire.
*I am writing (familiar).*C'est facile à faire.
That is easy to do.

b. Adjectives that take *à* with their Noun object will take *à* with the Infinitive. See 88.

Ce bois est propre *à* brûler.
This wood is fit for burning.

C'est un paysage agréable *à* voir.
It is a landscape pleasing to look at.

c. The Infinitive with *à* is also used as a descriptive adjunct to nouns.

Maison *à* louer ou *à* vendre.
House to let or for sale.

Un homme *à* craindre.
A man to be feared.

Du bois *à* brûler.
Firewood.

d. It is also used after certain prepositional phrases: *de manière à*, *so as to*; *jusqu'à*, *even to*, *as far as to*;

Il faut agir *de manière à* se faire aimer.

We must act in such a way as to make ourselves loved.

3. THE INFINITIVE WITH DE.

242. The chief uses of the preposition *de* are to express :

(a) A relation of identity or possession; (b) a relation of origin; (c) a relation of separation. The Infinitive consequently will be preceded by *de* after expressions that signify any of these fundamental relations.

a. Identity or possession after nouns :

L'art *de* planter.

The art of planting.

J'ai l'honneur *de* vous saluer.

I have the honor to wish you good day.

Ce n'est pas la peine *d'en* parler.

It is not worth while speaking of it.

Le plaisir que j'ai *de* vous voir.

The pleasure I have to see you.

b. A relation of origin, after verbs that denote a personal feeling or emotion, to show the source of the feeling :

s'affliger, *grieve.*
brûler, *wish ardently.*
se chagriner *grieve.*
craindre, *fear.*
enrager, *be vexed.*
s'étonner, *wonder.*
féliciter, *congratulate.*
se flatter, *flatter o.s.*
frémir, *shudder.*

gémir, *lament.*
ne pas haïr, *rather like.*
s'indigner, *be indignant.*
si moquer, *laugh.*
mourir, *long.*
se riquer, *take pride.*
plaindre, *pity.*
se plaindre, *complain.*
regretter, *regret.*

se réjouir, *rejoice.*
remercier, *thank.*
se repentir, *repent.*
se reprocher, *reproach o.s.*
rire, *laugh.*
rougir, *blush.*
trembler, *tremble.*
se vanter, *boast.*

Il s'afflige *de* vous voir.

Il brûle *de* continuer ses études.

c. A relation of separation.

s'abstenir, *abstain.*
cesser, *cease, leave off.*
décourager, *discourage.*
dédaigner, *disdain.*
défendre, *forbid.*
se défendre, *defend o.s.*
se désaccoutumer, *leave off.*

désespérer, *despair.*
détourner, *dissuade.*
dispenser, *dispense.*
douter, *doubt.*
empêcher, *prevent.*
éviter, *avoid.*
s'excuser, *excuse o.s.*

se garder, *take heed.*
manquer, *fail.*
nier, *deny.*
pardonner, *excuse.*
se passer, *do without.*
prendre garde, *take heed.*
refuser, *refuse.*

Il a cessé *de* pleuvoir.

Il évite *de* voir ces hommes.

It is used also after verbs of :

d. Commanding,
commander, *command.*
défier, *defy.*
dire, *tell.*
ordonner, *order.*
sommer, *summon.*

e. Entreating, Advising,
conjuré, *beseech.*
conseiller, *advise.*
presser, *urge.*
prier, *beg.*
recommander, *recommend.*

f. Idioms with avoir.
avoir besoin, *need.*
" coutume, *be accustomed.*
" dessein, *intend.*
" envie, *wish.*
(For full list see page 57, 6.)

Also with
convince; s
threaten; n

Il m'
He or

g. It is en

Il est
It is

h. it is us

Je suis
I am gr

i. With p

order to; a
unless; fau

Avant de

À moins
it is th

j. It is sc
finite verb.

243. Pa
in the sen

Il comm
He bega

244. Po
It must be

Pourdeveni
(In order) to

Notice als

245. Sa

246. Aq

Il faut b

5.

247. Wh
etc., are use
used, provid

We may

Il croit

He thin

Il'avou

He conf

But if the

Je crois

I believe

Also with: *s'agir*, to be the question; *blâmer*, blame; *choisir*, choose; *convaincre*, convince; *se dépêcher*, se hâter, hasten; *feindre*, feign; *jurer*, swear; *menacer*, threaten; *mettre* à même, enable; *proposer*, propose; *promettre*, promise.

Il m'a ordonné de faire cela.
He ordered me to do that.

Il m'a conseillé de le faire.
He advised me to do it.

g. It is employed also after *être*, used impersonally with all adjectives.

Il est nécessaire de partir.
It is necessary to depart.

Il sera facile de faire cela.
It will be easy to do that.

h. it is used also after such adjectives as take *de* with their noun object. See 89.

Je suis désolé de vous voir pleurer.
I am grieved to see you weep.

Vous êtes impatient de partir.
You are eager to set out.

i. With prepositions, such as *près de*, near; *loin de*, far from; *afin de*, in order to; *avant (que) de*, before; *si... (que) de*, so... as to; *à moins de*, unless; *faute de*, for lack of; *à force de*, by dint of.

Avant de mourir il avoua son crime. Before dying he confessed his crime.

À moins d'être fou, il n'est pas possible de raisonner ainsi. Unless one is a fool, it is impossible to reason thus.

j. It is sometimes used to give vivacity in narrations, being then equivalent to a finite verb.

Rats en campagne aussitôt;
Et le citadin de dire (=dit):
Achevons tout notre rôl.

4. INFINITIVE WITH OTHER PREPOSITIONS.

243. Par with the infinitive follows the verbs *commencer*, *finir*, in the sense of *doing first*, *doing last*.

Il commença par trop parler; il finit par se taire.
He began by speaking too much; he ended by being silent.

244. Pour with the infinitive means *in order to*, *for the purpose of*. It must be used with the infinitive following *assez* and *trop*.

Pour devenir savant il faut étudier. | Il est assez âgé pour marcher.
(In order) to become a scholar one must study. | He is old enough to walk.

Notice also: Il a été puni pour avoir menti.
He was punished for having lied.

Il est bien ignorant pour avoir étudié si longtemps.
He is very ignorant though he has studied so long.

245. Sans; without: Il s'en alla sans rien dire.

246. Après usually requires the Perfect of the Infinitive:

Il faut bonne mémoire après avoir menti.

5. COMPARISONS BETWEEN ENGLISH AND FRENCH AS TO INFINITIVES.

247. When the verbs *croire*, *avouer*, *dire*, *espérer*, *nier*, *de*, *penser*, *prétendre*, *vouloir*, etc., are used in connection with another verb, the infinitive of the second verb may be used, provided both verbs refer to the same subject.

We may say:

Il croit devoir réussir.
He thinks he must succeed.
Il'avoua l'avoir fait.
He confessed having done it.

Instead of:

Il croit qu'il doit réussir.
Il'avoua qu'il l'avait fait.

But if the verbs refer to different subjects the infinitive must not be used:

Je crois qu'il fera cela.
I believe that he will do that.

Il veut que j'aille là.
He wishes me to go there.

NOTE.—Following the above, we say :

Il retourna **sans me voir**. *He returned without seeing me.*
because "retourna" and "voir" refer to one and the same person.

But when the subjects of the two verbs are different persons we must employ a clause :

Il retourna **sans que je le visse**. *He returned without my having seen him.*

Il fut puni **pour avoir menti**. | But : Il fut puni **à cause que j'ai menti**.
He was punished for having lied. | *He was punished for my lying.*

248. The English construction with the past participle, after *faire, have, make ; entendre, hear ; voir, see, etc.*, is not admissible in French. The French construction demands the simple infinitive, which will be understood by supplying *quelqu'un* (somebody) after the principle verb.

I am having a house **built**.
The horses we have seen **put** together.

Je fais bâtir une maison.
Les chevaux que nous avons vu atteler ensemble.
J'ai entendu chanter ces chansons.

I have heard those songs **sung**.

NOTE.—It will be noticed that the noun object of the infinitive must, according to the usual rule, follow the infinitive.

249. The English present participle after *see, hear, watch*, are usually expressed in French by the Infinitive.

J'entends chanter la dame.
I hear the lady sing(ing).

J'ai entendu chanter la dame.
I heard the lady sing(ing).

NOTE.—Often a phrase with *qui* is used instead of the infinitive.

Je l'entends **qui chante**.
I hear him sing(ing).

Le voilà **qui tombe**.
Behold him fall(ing).

THÈME 61.

Translate. Explain the constructions with the infinitives.

1. Bonjour, mes élèves. Quelle leçon vous ai-je dit d'apprendre ? 2. Nous avons aujourd'hui la leçon des infinitifs, leçon assez difficile pour apprendre. 3. Dépêchez-vous de commencer ; nous avons beaucoup à faire. 4. Commencez par traduire les phrases du thème français. 5. Trop parler nuit. 6. S' étonner est du peuple, admirer est du sage. 7. Il faut manger pour vivre et non pas vivre pour manger. 8. Naitre avec le printemps, mourir avec les roses, voilà du papillon le destin enchanté. 9. Je désire apprendre le français ; je veux savoir le lire aussi facilement que l'anglais. 10. Il vous faudra beaucoup travailler pour cela. 11. Je crois devoir faire mon possible pour y réussir. 12. Travaillons pour devenir savants, pour vous faire aimer. 13. Lire trop et lire trop peu sont deux défauts blâmables. 14. Les paresseux passent leur temps à flâner ; les diligents emploient leur temps à lire, à dessiner, à étudier. 15. Quoiqu' il soit rare de voir les riches faire visite aux savants, on voit très souvent les savants aux portes des riches. 16. C'est que les riches n'ont pas coutume de dire, comme dit monsieur Jourdan : La belle chose que de savoir quelque chose ! et que les savants ont appris à apprécier la valeur de la richesse. 17. Venez me voir demain matin. 18. Je ne pense pas que je puisse aller vous voir demain. 19. Aussitôt que je serai rétabli j'irai vous voir. 20. Je vais tâcher de lui plaire et qu'elle me plaise. 21. On commence par être dupe, on finit par être fripon. 22. Quoique la justice ne se vende pas, il en coûte beaucoup pour l'obtenir. 23. Hâtez-vous lentement et

sans per
dormir d
Loin de
26. Pe

1. A
at least
One day
just had
without
work, h
globe.
find the
maintain
babies.
sation.
number
as you c
8. Georg
voring t
misdeed
father,
heaven f
truth.
had hidd
profit by
would h
than to
do and v
boasted
them.
swimmir
pistol-sh
m.) were
much as
heart by
from (to
replace,
mortgag
friend !
world !"

1. A
which th
was goin
days had
and wat
depriving
guard²
soldier :

sans perdre courage. 24. Je commençais à désespérer et j'allais m'endormir dans un coin solitaire, lorsqu'un rossignol se mit à chanter. 25. Loin de troubler le sommeil d'autrui, ses accords semblaient le bercer. 26. Personne ne songeait à le faire taire.

EXERCISE 62.

1. A certain scholar, who had the misfortune to be an atheist or who at least pretended to be (155), used to come to visit Isaac Newton. 2. One day he began to examine a fine celestial globe that Newton had just had made for-himself (*se*). 3. After having examined it some time without ceasing to express his admiration for (of) the perfection of the work, he at last asked (243) Newton who had made that magnificent globe. 4. "No one," answered the philosopher coolly, not sorry to find the opportunity of making his friend see how difficult it is to maintain atheistical (*athée*) opinions. 5. Mrs. Budd has nerves and babies. She has a way of saying, "Mr. Budd!" that destroys conversation. 6. To try his new hatchet, George endeavored to cut-down a number of cherry-trees that his father had just planted. 7. His father, as you can easily believe, was astonished and angry at seeing the damage. 8. George hastened to throw himself at his feet. 9. Far from endeavoring to conceal his fault, he confessed that he was the author of the misdeed. 10. "I cannot tell a lie," said he, "I did it." 11. The father, without waiting-for an excuse, embraced him, and thanked heaven for having given him a son who was not afraid of telling the truth. 12. Some one came to warn Charles the Fifth that a criminal had hidden himself near a town on his (the) way (*route f.*) in order to profit by the circumstance to ask-for his pardon (*grâce f.*) 13. "It would have been better," answered the emperor to tell him where I am than to tell me where he is. 14. "There are several things that I can do and which you cannot [do]," said Lord Byron to Polidori, who had boasted of having done great things. 15. Polidori defied him to name them. 16. "I can," said Byron, "swim across this river (cross... by swimming, *traverser... à la nage*), I can snuff-out that candle with (*de*) a pistol-shot, and I have written a poem of which 14,000 copies (*exemplaire m.*) were sold in one day. 17. "Madam, your conduct astonishes me as-much as it afflicts me. 18. Not content with rending (*déchirer*) my heart by your disdain(s), you have the indelicacy to keep-back (*retenir*) from (to) me a tooth-brush, which my means do not permit me to replace, my property (*propriétés pl.*) being burdened (*grevées*) with mortgages (*hypothèque f.*). 19. Adieu, too beautiful and too ungrateful friend! May (*pres. subj. of pouvoir*) we see each other again in a better world!" "Charles Edward."

COMPOSITION 63.

1. *A Story of Bonaparte*.—After having gained the battle of Arcola, in which the soldiers scarcely left off fighting during three days, Bonaparte was going-through¹ his camp to see if the great fatigues of those three days had not made his soldiers lose anything of their habitual discipline and watchfulness. The general finds a sentinel asleep, succeeds in depriving him softly of his gun without awakening him, and mounts guard² in (at) his place. After sleeping several minutes more the soldier awakes, astonished at seeing Bonaparte holding his gun and

at finding himself asleep at his post. "To sleep at one's post is to die," he exclaimed, "I am lost!" "Reassure yourself," said Bonaparte. "After having undergone so much, a brave soldier may be allowed to succumb to sleep. But another time, take care to choose your time better."

2. *A Story of Æsop*.—Xanthus, Æsop's master, wishing to entertain a few of his friends, ordered his slave to buy what there was [of] best. Æsop bought only tongues, which he had the servants prepare with much skill. The guests at first praised the dishes, but at last they grew disgusted with them. "Did I not order you," said Xanthus, "to buy what there was [of] best." "Where can one find anything [of] better than the tongue?" replied Æsop. "It serves to unite, to instruct, to elevate men; by it we can persuade and rule assemblies. It helps us to discharge the first of all duties, which is to praise the gods." "Well," said Xanthus, who thought he would catch him, "I order you to buy to-morrow what there is [of] worst." Xanthus again invited his friends to dine with him, but great was his anger to find that Æsop had again bought only tongues. "The tongue," said the slave to excuse himself, "never abstains from doing evil. It always delights in slandering and speaking ill of others, and if by it we can praise the gods, it also enables us to blaspheme them. Let us learn to govern it so as never to have to regret having received from the gods the gift of speech³."

¹parcoeurir. ²faire faction. ³permettre, which requires the indirect object. See 184. ⁴Æsop. ⁵régaler. ⁶se dégoûter de. ⁷par. ⁸parole.

XXI. THE PARTICIPLE (LE PARTICIPLE).

I.

Verbal forms in *-ant* are of three kinds: (1) Adjectives; (2) Gerunds (Participles preceded by *en*); (3) Present Participles.

1. THE VERBAL ADJECTIVE (ADJECTIF VERBAL).

250) The Verbal Adjective in *-ant* signifies Quality, State, Disposition, etc. It is variable, like other adjectives.

Il a des fils obéissants, une femme charmante et des filles aimantes.
He has obedient sons; a charming wife; and loving daughters.

NOTE 1.—While Present Participles may become Verbal Adjectives, it must be remembered that *ayant*, *having*; *étant*, *being*, *soi-disant*, *self-styled*, are invariable.

NOTE 2.—There is rarely any difference in form between the Verbal Adjective and the Present Participle from which it is derived. Some differences, however, do exist.

Compare :		Compare also :	
Verbal Adjectives.	Pres. Participle.	Verbal Substantive.	Pres. Participle.
convaincant	from convainquant.	un équivalent.	from équivalent.
différent	" différant.	un fabricant	" fabriquant.
excellent	" excellent.	un précédent	" précédant.
fatigant	" fatignant.	un président	" présidant.
négligent	" négligeant.	un résident	" résidant.
précédent	" précédant.		
provoquant	" provoquant.		

2. THE GERUND (GÉRONDIF).

251. The Gerund in French is only used after the preposition *en*, and is equivalent to a noun governed by *dans* or *pendant*. It expresses

either a variable

Les f
En
Il do

NOTE.—
in -ant
the infini
We may
But we

Il a peur
vall
Après
fatigu
Il a fini p
Je n'aime
Le jeu

In man
ference.
En r

3.

252.
denotes

Un garçon
A boy (a p

In dea
difficult to
This diffic
is strongly
Adjective
tive seem
nent qual

Pres. Par
Voyez-vous
ward
Cette bou

La veuve
genou
Voyez-vous
(strea

253. T
French.
infinitive
require

I hear
There
I saw

either an *Accompanying Action* or else *Means* or *Instrument*. It is invariable in form.

Les flots s'avancent **en mugissant**. *The waves advance roaring.*

En lisant on se fatigue. *One tires one's self by reading.*

Il dort **en marchant**. Les ouvriers travaillent **en chantant**, etc.

NOTE.—It must be remembered that English gerunds can be translated by the form in **-ant** only where we can use the preposition *en*. After other prepositions in French the infinitive or a noun must be employed.

We may say with the Pres. Part: **En** (*in, by, while*) **marchant**, on se fatigue. But we must say with the infinitive or the noun:

Il a peur **de dormir**. Il aime **à travailler**. *He is afraid of sleeping. He likes working.*

Après avoir marché, on est fatigué. *After having walked, one is tired.*

Il a fini **par avouer** son crime. *He ended by confessing his crime.*

Je n'aime pas **sa lecture**. *I do not like his reading.*

Le jeu et la chasse l'ont ruiné. *Gaming and hunting have ruined him.*

In many cases the use of the gerund with *en*, or the participle is a matter of indifference.

En rentrant (or **Rentrant**) chez nous, nous avons vu l'enfant.

3. THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE (PARTICIPLE PRÉSENT ou ACTIF).

252. The Present Participle is thoroughly verbal in force. It denotes always action. It is invariable.

Un garçon (une fille) **étudiant** sa leçon.
A boy (a girl) studying his (her) lesson.

Des garçons (des filles) **étudiant** leurs leçons.
Boys (girls) studying their lessons.

In dealing with Verbal Adjectives and Present Participles, it will often be found difficult to tell whether it is the verbal force that predominates or the adjective force. This difficulty will be lessened by remembering, that in the Present Participle Action is strongly marked, and that such action is usually transitory and definite. The Verbal Adjective, on the other hand, denotes an inherent Quality or State; and, if the adjective seems to denote action, it will be found on closer examination that it is a permanent quality rather than an action in progress. Compare:

Pres. Participle.—*Action. Invariable.*

Voyez-vous ces débris **flottant** vers (towards) la côte.

Cette bouche **souriant** à chaque mot.

La veuve d'Hector **pleurant** à vos genoux.

Voyez-vous la rosée (*dew*) **ruisselant** (*streaming*) des feuilles.

Verbal Adjective.—*State. Variable.*

Calypso aperçut des cordages **flottants** sur la côte.

De **riantes** prairies qui nous offrent des paysages **charmants**.

Une voix toujours **caressante** et tendre.

Voyez-vous les feuilles **ruisselantes** de rosée.

253. The participle is used much more frequently in English than in French. Notice in the following examples that relative sentences, infinitives, or past participles are used in constructions which in English require present participles:

I heard them singing.

There he is falling.

I saw men beating children.

Je les ai entendus chanter.

Le voilà qui tombe.

J'ai vu des hommes qui battaient des enfants.

II.

THE PAST PARTICIPLE (PARTICIPE PASSÉ OU PASSIF.)

254. The Past Participle used Adjectively. The Past Participle used without an auxiliary verb agrees like an adjective.

Un habit **gâté**. Des habits **gâtés** | Une robe **gâtée**. Des robes **gâtées**.

As to the agreement of *demi*, *nu*, *attendu*, *compris*, etc., see 66, 68, 69.

255. The Past Participle with *être*. After the verb *être*, not used as the auxiliary of the reflexive verb, the Participle agrees with the subject.

Ce garçon est **aimé**. Ces garçons sont **aimés**.
Ma sœur est **partie**. Mes sœurs sont **parties**.

256. The Past Participle with *avoir*. The Past Participle with *avoir*, and with *être* as the auxiliary of reflexive verbs, agrees with the *direct object* preceding it, otherwise it is invariable.

Direct object preceding:
Voici les livres **que** j'ai achetés.
Combien de livres avez-vous achetés ?
Que de maison il a bâties !
Elles se sont adressées à moi.
They applied to me.
Ces hommes se sont loués.
Ces filles se sont louées.

Direct object following, or lacking:
J'ai acheté des livres.
J'ai acheté beaucoup de livres.
Elle a dormi toute la nuit.
Je lui ai parlé. *I have spoken to her.*
Elles se sont donné la main (i.e., to one another). *They have shaken hands.*
Ces hommes se sont nui. (Nuire = to injure. "Se" is an indirect object.)

NOTE 1.—*En* is not to be regarded as a direct object.

Avez-vous des fleurs ? Oui, j'en ai acheté.

NOTE 2.—The student will be careful to distinguish nouns used as adverbial phrases to denote Amount, Measure, from real objects, and consequently to leave invariable the Past Participles of such verbs as *peser*, to weigh, *coûter*, to cost, *courir*, to run, *valoir*, to be worth, etc., when following such adverbial expressions.

La viande **que** j'ai pesée.
The meat which I weighed.

But : Les dix kilogrammes **que** la viande a pesé.

Les sommes, les ennuis, que cette affaire a coûté.

But : Les deux kilomètres **que** nous avons couru.

But : Les dix mille francs **que** cette maison a valu.

The ten thousand francs that this house was worth..

Les heures qu'il a dormi (= Les heures pendant lesquelles il a dormi.)

Les cerfs **que** nous avons courus.

The stags we have hunted.

Les récompenses que ces talents lui ont values.

The rewards that his talents have procured him.

257. Past Participle of an Impersonal Verb.—The Past Participle of an Impersonal Verb is always invariable.

Les chaleurs qu'il a fait cet été.

The heat there has been this summer.

Il est arrivé des malheurs à votre frère.

Les orages qu'il y a eu.

The storms there have been.

But : Des malheurs lui sont arrivés.

258. The Past Participle followed by an Infinitive.—There is sometimes difficulty in deciding whether the object in such sentences as :

Les dames que j'ai entendues chanter.

The ladies whom I have heard sing.

Les chansons que j'ai entendu chanter.

The songs which I have heard sung.

is the object of the principal verb or of the Infinitive. It must be kept in mind that the French construction in the second of these sentences is as if we understand 'quel-

qu'un' (sive infinitive body sing. entendu, Comp

Les blets Les acteurs Com La leçon

NOTE 1

NOTE 2

Transla

1. A vous tre est mên les leço difficult vous ne le franç mal em l'étude d'avoir 8. Cela entendu sonne o 10. Les ou voit preuves sont pas présent malheur l'autre, allée sa regarda des solo la ville. vues ? de bat 20. Le naître c la chas 22. Qu voix r paysag rianta c blanche écoulé l'excurs

qu'un' (*somebody*) after 'entendu', or else regard 'chanter' as equivalent to a passive infinitive: *The songs which I have heard somebody sing.* I have heard somebody sing the songs, consequently 'que' is the object of 'chanter' and not of 'ai entendu,' which therefore remains invariable.

Compare :

Les blés que j'ai vus mûrir (*ripen*).
Les acteurs que j'ai entendus réclamer.

Les blés que j'ai vu semer (*sow*).
Les vers que j'ai entendu réclamer.

Compare also :

La leçon que j'ai oubliée.

La leçon que j'ai oublié d'apprendre.

NOTE 1.—The past Participle of *faire* followed by an infinitive is always invariable.

Les hommes que j'ai fait agir. Les maisons que j'ai fait bâtir.

NOTE 2.—The past participle *été* is always invariable.

THÈME 64.

Translate. Comment on the form and agreement of the participles.

1. Aujourd'hui je vais vous interroger sur les participes. Avez-vous trouvé la leçon difficile. 2. Nous ne l'avons pas trouvée difficile ; elle est même intéressante. 3. Il s'y est trouvé moins de difficultés que dans les leçons précédentes. C'est en étudiant qu'on voit disparaître les difficultés. 4. Vous avez fait déjà des progrès étonnants. Jamais vous ne vous repentirez des efforts que vous avez faits pour apprendre le français. 5. Cependant combien de personnes se sont repenties d'avoir mal employé les années qu'elles ont vécu. 6. Les jours données à l'étude ne sont jamais perdus. 7. Combien de gens j'ai vus se repentir d'avoir perdu trop d'heures à l'école. C'est ainsi qu'ils sont punis. 8. Cela dit, commençons. Beaucoup de beaux sentiments qu'on a entendu prononcer ont été perdus faute d'être appliqués. 9. Une personne obligeant quelquefois peut ne pas être une personne obligeante. 10. Les individus obligeants sont toujours aimés de leurs connaissances ; ou voit leur amis s'en allant partout publier leur éloge. 11. Voilà des preuves convainquant tout le monde de ce qu'elle a dit. 12. Elles ne sont pas, selon moi, très convaincantes. Les deux amis se sont fait des présents ; ils se sont écrit plusieurs lettres. Voilà tout. 13. Deux malheureux sont comme deux arbrisseaux qui, s'appuyant l'un contre l'autre, se fortifient l'un l'autre. 14. Tout en disant cela, elle s'en est allée sans se plaindre. 15. Les Romains, se destinant à la guerre et la regardant comme le seul art, voulaient la perfectionner. 16. Il y a eu des soldats qui se sont laissés prendre. 17. Il est arrivé des troupes à la ville. On les a vus combattre ; on les a vu battre. Les avez-vous vues ? 18. La guerre a fini plus tôt que nous ne l'aurions cru. 19. Autant de batailles notre général a livrées, autant de victoires il a gagnées. 20. Les grands hommes appartiennent moins au siècle qui les a vus naître qu'à celui qui les a formés. 21. Tous ceux qui aiment la pêche, la chasse, la promenade devraient aller visiter les îles du Saint-Laurent. 22. Que de chansons nous y avons entendu chanter ! Que de belles voix nous y avons entendues chanter ! Combien de charmants paysages on y voit ! 23. Quoi de plus beau que les îles dont les riantes coteaux sont couverts de vignes et d'arbres. 24. La petite maison blanche que j'y ai fait bâtir m'est bien chère. 25. C'est là qu'il s'est écoulé bien de douces heures. 26. Cet été le temps m'a manqué pour l'excursion que j'avais compté que je ferais aux Mille-Iles.

EXERCISE 65.

1. Some one asked an Irishman, recently home (returned) from Canada, what sort of pastime bear-hunting (*chasse à l'ours*) was. 2. Very diverting and amusing, he replied, as long as (*tant que*) you are chasing the bear. 3. But it sometimes happens that the bear, pressed too hard (*fort*), turns and chases you in his turn, then bear-hunting is not amusing at all, and is even unpleasant (displeasing). 4. The Danaïdes (*Danaïdes* f.) ceaselessly drawing (*puiser*) water, and trying to fill pierced vessels (*vase*) are the emblems of men devoting themselves to some (a) useless labor. 5. The toil of dropping buckets into empty wells and growing old in drawing nothing up! 6. War is a horrible scourge. 7. Imagine the fields ravaged, the harvest(s) trampled (*fouler*) under the feet of horses, fences overturned, trees cast-down (*abattre*) roads interrupted, bridges destroyed, your father and your brothers torn from their loved ones to fill, perhaps, a distant grave, your mother and your sisters weeping and lamenting, cursing, perhaps, those who have caused all this desolation. 8. The smoke of glory dissipated, the conqueror finds the land desolated, his people destroyed, his power annihilated and his own happiness ruined. 9. Swallows are charming birds; charming everybody by the surprising grace of their movements. 10. It is a most interesting spectacle to see them eating, drinking, bathing while flying; catching the insects on (of) which they live, grazing (*raser*) the surface of the pond and seizing the insects gathered there; changing the direction of their flight at every moment, rising, descending, losing themselves and reappearing, and describing thousands and thousands of (*mille et mille*) circles in the air.

COMPOSITION 66.

1. *Three Nations.*—A Frenchman, an Englishman, and a German were commissioned, it is said, to give the world the benefit of their views on that interesting animal, the Camel. Away goes the Frenchman to the *Jardin des Plantes*, spends an hour there in a rapid investigation, returns, and writes a feuilleton, in which there is no phrase the Academy can blame, but also no phrase which adds to (increases) the general knowledge¹. He is perfectly satisfied, however, and says: "*Le voilà, le chameau!*" The Englishman packs-up² his tea-caddy³ and a magazine of provisions; pitches⁴ his tent in the East; remains there two years studying the Camel in its habits; and returns with a thick volume of facts, arranged without order, expounded without philosophy, but serving as⁵ valuable (precious) materials for all who come after him. The German, despising the frivolity of the Frenchman and the unphilosophic⁶ matter-of-factness⁷ of the Englishman, retires⁸ to his study there to construct the idea of a Camel from out of the depths of his Moral Consciousness. And he is still at-it⁹.

G. H. LEWES.

2. *The Vision of Mirzah.*—I saw the valley opening at the other end and spreading-forth¹⁰ into an immense ocean. Traversing this ocean and dividing it into two equal parts, a huge rock of adamant could be seen. The clouds still rested on one half of the ocean so that I could discover nothing in it. But the other appeared to me a vast ocean planted with innumerable islands that were covered with fruit and

flowers
see per
among
of flow
waters,
wings o
told me
saw op
fresh a
filled a
sand of
thou h
thine i
tions w

¹conn
phique.
¹⁰envol

259.

avant-hi

hier,
aujourd
demain,
après-de

hier (au)

demain

avant, a
après,
alors,

260.

ailleurs,
alentour
auprès
dedans,
dehors,
derrière
dessous,
dessus,
devant,

*Disti
preposi

*In to
express
English

Compa
He s
Il pa

flowers, and interwoven with¹¹ a thousand little shining seas. I could see persons dressed in¹² glorious habits, covered with garlands, passing among the trees, lying down by the side of fountains, or resting on beds of flowers; and could hear a confused harmony of singing birds, falling waters, human voices and musical instruments. I wished-for the wings of an eagle to fly away¹³ to those happy places; but the genius told me there was no passage except through the gates of death that I saw opening upon the bridge. "The islands," said he, "that are so fresh and green before thee, and with which the whole ocean appears filled as far as thou canst see, are more numerous than the grains of sand of the sea-shore; there are myriads of islands behind those which thou hast here discovered, reaching¹⁰ further than thine eye, or even thine imagination can extend itself. Are not these, O Mirzah, habitations worth contending for?"

ADDISON.

¹connaissances, pl. ²emballer. ³boite (t.) à thé. ⁴dresser. ⁵55,3. ⁶peu philosophique. ⁷esprit positif. ⁸se retirer. ⁹y. ¹⁰s'étendre. ¹¹entrelacer de. ¹²vêtu de. ¹³s'envoler.

VI. THE ADVERB (DE L'ADVERBE).*

I. THE PRINCIPAL ADVERBS (LES PRINCIPAUX ADVERBES).

259. The Adverbs of Time are :

avant-hier,	day before	autrefois,	formerly.	puis,	then.
hier,	yesterday.	parfois,	at times.	jadis,	of old.
aujourd'hui,	yesterday.	de temps à autre,	at times.	depuis,	since.
demain,	to-day.	rarement,	seldom.	dernièrement,	lately.
après-demain,	to-morrow.	toujours,	always.	maintenant,	now.
	day after to-morrow.	jamais,	ever (never).	bientôt,	soon.
hier (au) soir,	yesterday evening.	quand,	when.	désormais,	hereafter.
		tard,	late.	longtemps,	long.
demain matin,	to-morrow morning.	en retard,	behind time.	aussitôt,	immediately.
		tôt ou tard,	sooner or later.	déjà,	already.
avant, auparavant,	before.	enfin,	at last, finally.	encore,	still, yet.
après,	afterwards.	ensuite,	afterwards.	d'abord,	at first.
alors,	then.			quelquefois,	sometimes.

260. The Adverbs of Place are :

ailleurs,	elsewhere.	environ,	about.	y,	there.
alentour (autour),	around.	ici,	here.	en,	from there.
auprès (près, proche),	near.	là,	there.	quelque part,	somewhere.
dedans,*	within.	là-bas,	yonder.	nulle part,	nowhere.
dehors,*	without.	là-haut,	aloft.	partout,	everywhere.
derrière,	behind.	loin,	far.	de toutes parts,	on all sides.
dessous,*	under.	où,	where?	de part et	on both
dessus,*	above.	d'où,	whence.	d'autre,	sides.
devant,	before.	jusqu'où,	how far.	n'importe où,	anywhere.

*Distinguish the adverbs *dedans, dehors, dessous, dessus*, etc. from the prepositions *dans, hors, sous, sur*, etc.

*In translating English adverbs into French the student must be on the alert to express in the verbs in French many of the adverbs which so frequently are used in English to complete the meaning of the verb.

Compare :

He sets out at five o'clock.

Il part à cinq heures.

He runs through the book.

Il parcourt le livre.

Fill it up.

Remplissez-le, etc.

261. *Adverbs of Quantity :*

assez,	enough.	combien,	how much? how	ne...guère, but little, but few.
autant,	as much, as many.		many?	tant, so much, so many.
beaucoup	much, many.	moins,	less, fewer.	trop. too much, too many.
bien,	much, many	plus (davantage),*	more.	

Force is sometimes used adverbially for *beaucoup de* : Il a **force** amis.

***Davantage** usually takes the place of *plus* at the end of a phrase : Cela me **plaît davantage**. Je n'en dirai pas **davantage**.

NOTE 1.—The construction of these Quantitative Adverbs with nouns is explained in 50, 2 ; 51, b.

They may also be used like other adverbs to modify adjectives.

262. *The Adverbs of Affirmation :*

oui,	yes.	assurément,	certainly.	d'accord,	agree (done ?).
si, *	yes.	soit,	be it so.	vraiment,	indeed.
si fait,	yes indeed.	peut-être,	perhaps.	volontiers,	willingly.

*In affirmative answer to a negative question or statement.

263. *Adverbs of Negation.*

ne, not.	pas (point) no, not.	nullement, by no means
non, no, not.	pas (point) du tout, not at all.	peu, as in peu intéressant uninteresting.

264. *Ne. The primary negative particle in French is ne.*

1. By itself it is able to mark negation only in certain cases.

a. With **pouvoir, oser, cesser, bouger** (*budge*), in a familiar style. Also with **savoir**, used for *pouvoir*, or when expressing uncertainty.

On **ne** saurait qu'y faire.
It cannot be helped.

Je **ne** sais quel chemin prendre.
I know not what road to take.

b. With a verb in the **past tense**, after the time-phrases **il y a....que, depuis....que**.

Il y a longtemps que je **ne** l'ai vu.
I have not seen him for a long time.

Depuis deux ans que je **ne** l'ai vue.
Since I saw her (I have not seen her since)
two years ago.

c. In various phrases, such as :

ne....aucun (96), no.	ne....personne, nobody.	ne....rien, nothing, not
ne....guère, but little,	ne....nul (97), no.	ne....ni...ni, neither...nor.
but few.	ne....plus*, no more, no	ne....nulle part, nowhere.
ne....jamais never.	longer.	
	ne....que, only.	

* **Plus** has a negative force in abbreviated expressions such as : **Plus de larmes !**
No more tears !

d. In various other phrases, such as : **n'importe**, *no matter* ; **n'avoir que faire**, *have nothing to do* ; **qu'il ne déplaît**, *may it please* ; **si ce n'est**, *except*, etc.

e. After **que** meaning *pourquoi*. **Que** n'êtes-vous arrivé plus tôt ?

2. In other instances **ne** is found connected with other words, such as **pas, point** (rarely **mot, goutte**), which strengthen the negation.

Je **ne** lis **pas**. Je **ne** lis **point**. Je **ne** dis **mot**. Je **ne** vois **goutte**.

3. **Ne** is employed in what seems a pleonastic usage :—

a. After expressions of *fear* :

Je crains qu'il **ne** vienne.
I fear that he will come.

But : Je crains qu'il **ne** vienne **pas**.
I fear he will not come.

b. After **à moins que**, except, unless (and **si**, unless):

Je ne sortirai à moins qu'il **ne** fasse beau.

I shall not go out except it be (i.e. should it not be) fine.

c. Usually, though not necessarily, after expressions of *hindering, preventing* :

Prenez garde qu'on **ne** vous séduise.

Empêchez qu'il **ne** vienne.

Take care that you are not misled.

Prevent him from coming.

d. After negative expressions of *Doubt* (and sometimes *Denial*):

Pas de doute qu'il **ne** vienne.

Je **ne nie pas** que cela **(ne)** soit.

e. After an affirmative sentence, containing a comparative or *autre, autrement* :

Il est plus habile que vous **ne** pensez.

He is cleverer than you think. (You do not think him clever).

C'est autre chose que je **ne** croyais. *That is other than I thought.*

The disjunctive form of **ne** is **non**.

265. Non.—*Non* is used, and not *ne* :

a. In negative answers: Étiez-vous là? **Non**. A more emphatic answer would be: **Non pas** (not *non point*).

b. In such expressions as :

Je dis que non. *I say no.*

Peut-être que non. *Perhaps no.*

c. Before phrases not essential to the sentence containing them :

Il l'a fait, **non** pour moi mais pour mon père. *He did it, not for me, but, etc.*

Dans une maison **non** loin de l'endroit. *In a house not far from the spot.*

J'irai **non** que je le veuille mais parce que vous le voulez.

I shall go not because I wish it, but because you wish it.

266. Pas. Point.—Both are used to strengthen *ne*, but with a difference of force. *Point* denies absolutely; *pas* permits qualifications to its denial. Consequently *pas* is preferable before numeral adjectives and quantitative adverbs, and before comparisons. *Point* is preferred for absolute negations and for negations as to habitual actions. Both may be used absolutely. *Point* alone may be used (= *non*) in answers :

Il n'a **pas** assez de livres.

Il ne lit **pas**. *He is not reading.*

Pas beaucoup, **pas** trop.

Il n'a **pas (point)** de livres.

Il ne lit **point**. *He never reads.*

Êtes-vous content? **Point**.

267. Adverbs of Order, made by adding **-ment** to the feminine Ordinal Numerals.

premièrement, deuxièmement, troisièmement, etc.

268. Adverbs of Repetition, made by use of **fois** (*time*).

une fois; deux fois; trois fois; plusieurs fois; beaucoup de (bien des) fois.

once; twice; thrice; several times; many times.

269. Adverbs of Manner, Reason.

ainsi, so, thus; aussi, as, also, consequently; comme, as, like; pourquoi, why; donc, therefore.

NOTE.—Here we may notice the use of an absolute construction with adverbial force :

Les chasseurs s'en allèrent, le fusil sur l'épaule.

The hunters went away with their guns on their shoulders.

But the great mass of adverbs of manner are derived from adjectives after the following rules.

II. FORMATION OF ADVERBS FROM ADJECTIVES.

270. General Rule. The adjective can be changed into an adverb by the addition of **-ment** to the fem. sing. of the adjective. If the masc. sing. of the adjective ends in a vowel, **-ment** is added to it.

(franc) franche	gives franchement,	frankly.	sage	gives sagement,	wisely.
(fort) forte	" fortement,	strongly.	poli	" poliment,	politely.
(actif) active	" activement,	actively, etc.	vrai	" vraiment,	truly.

NOTE.—*Fou, beau, mou, nouveau* require also the feminine: *follement, belle-ment, mollement, nouvellement*.

Irregularities.

a. The adjectives ending in *-ant, -ent* undergo a slight modification into *-amment -emment*:

constant	gives constamment,	constantly.	prudent	gives prudemment,	prudently.
pesant	" pesamment,	heavily.	evident	" évidemment,	evidently, etc.

But *présent* becomes *présentment, at present*; *véhément, véhémentement, vehemently*.

b. Change *e* into *é* when adding *-ment* with:

aveuglement,	blindly.	énormément,	enormously.	opinâtrément,	obstinately.
commodément,	conveniently.	expressément,	expressly.	précisément,	precisely.
communément,	commonly.	immensément,	immensely.	profondément,	profoundly.
conformément,	conformably.	importunément,	importunately.	profusément,	profusely.
confusément,	confusedly.	obscurément,	obscurely.	uniformément,	uniformly.

c. The following take a circumflex accent:

assidûment, assiduously; *crûment, crudely*; *gaîment (gaiement), gayly*.

d. *Bref* becomes *brièvement*; *gentil, gentiment*; *traître, traîtreusement, treacherously*.

III. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS (COMPARAISON DES ADVERBES).

271. Comparison is indicated with the Adverb in the same manner as with the Adjective, except that, being adverbial, *le* is always invariable.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
vite. quickly.	Elle lit { moins vite aussi vite plus vite } que vous.	Son frère lit { le plus (most) vite. le moins (least) vite. bien (very) vite.

NOTE 1.—In the negative sentence *si* may be used for *aussi*:

Elle ne court pas aussi (si) vite que vous. *She does not run as (so) fast as you.*

NOTE 2.—The comparison of equality will be regular: *Elle court aussi bien (peu, mal) que vous. She runs as well (as little, as badly) as you.* But instead of *beaucoup*—which can never be modified except by *pas*—*autant*, or in negative sentences, *autant* or *tant*, is used.

Elle court autant que son frère.
He runs as much as her brother.

Elle ne court pas autant (tant) que lui.
She does not run as much as he.

272. The adverbs *mieux, better, best*; *moins less, least*; *pis, worse, worst*; *plus, more, most*, of themselves indicate comparison.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
Elle court She runs { bien. well. peu. little. mal. badly. beaucoup. much.	Elle court She runs { mieux que lui. (Never: plus bien.) better than he. moins que moi. (Never: plus peu.) less than I. pis que vous. (Or: plus mal.) worse than you. plus qu'eux. (Never: plus beaucoup.) more than they.	Elle lit She reads { le mieux. the best. le moins. the least. le pis (or le plus mal). the worst. le plus. the most.

273. Nouns used Adverbially.—Many nouns of Time, Measure, Quantity are used adverbially, with the preposition understood.

On travaille (pendant) **le jour** ; on dort (pendant) **la nuit**.

Nous avons acheté ce livre (pour) **dix francs**. Il a payé **six francs** le livre.

Nous irons la semaine prochaine (**l'année** prochaine).

IV. POSITION OF THE ADVERB (PLACE DE L'ADVERBE).

274. 1. For the position of Negative Adverbs, see 156.

2. Interrogative Adverbs and Adverbs of Locality usually hold the same positions in French as in English, preceding or following the verb.

3. The Adverb usually precedes the noun, adjective, or adverb to which it refers :

Assez de livres. *Books enough.* Assez beau. *Fine enough.*

(4) It will usually immediately follow the verb it modifies, and precede (according to 3) the perfect participle in compound tenses :

Vous avez mal employé votre temps. On l'a beaucoup loué.

NOTE 1.—Adverbs of Time can scarcely be said to modify the past participle. They do not stand between the auxiliary and the past participle :

Hier je me suis promené ; je me suis promené hier.

NOTE 2.—Long adverbs in *-ment*, or long adverbial phrases, are usually not placed between the auxiliary and the verb :

Malheureusement il n'est pas encore arrivé. *Unfortunately he has not yet arrived.*

5. The adverb is sometimes found detached from its phrase, as in :

Que (combien) cette ville est belle. Combien avez-vous de mains ?

Plus vous serez dilligent, plus vous serez heureux.

The more diligent you are, the happier you will be.

The adverb is rarely found, as in English it so frequently is found, between the subject and the verb :

Je puis à peine vous dire.

I scarcely can tell you.

THÈME 67.

Translate. Comment on any peculiarities in the use of the adverbs.

1. Mercredi soir j'ai reçu de Mme A. un billet comme suit : Madame A. fait ses compliments à M.— et le prie de lui faire l'honneur de venir, samedi soir, prendre le thé chez elle. 2. Vous irez, n'est-ce pas ? On s'amuse toujours chez elle. 3. Je n'irai pas à moins que vous n'alliez. 4. Moi aller ! Non, c'est tout à fait impossible. En outre, je ne suis pas au nombre des invités. 5. Je ne vois là aucune difficulté. 6. Merci bien. Je n'aime pas trop ces repas de famille où les étrangers se trouvent toujours de trop. 7. Chez Mme A. ils sont plus agréables que vous ne pensez. On ne s'y gêne jamais. 8. Eh bien, je ne dis pas non. Donnez, cependant, un coup d'œil à la traduction que voici. Il y a beaucoup de fautes, j'en suis bien sûr. 9. Lisez les phrases à haute voix. 10. Qui n'est que juste est dur ; qui n'est que sage est triste. 11. A qui se confesser si ce n'est à sa mère ? 12. L'hypocrite parle toujours autrement qu'il ne pense. 13. Comptez-lea un à un. Ne prenez qu'un à la fois. Autant de têtes, autant d'avis. 14. La France est

soixante-treize fois plus petite que l'Amérique. 15. Eschine était éloquent mais Démosthène l'était davantage. 16. Il est sorti vers les cinq heures et je ne l'ai pas vu depuis. 17. On ne ferme jamais tout-à-fait la porte aux flatteurs, on la pousse tout au plus doucement sur eux. 18. Mon jeune homme ne se fit pas prier; nous voilà mangeant et buvant, lui du moins. 19. On n'est jamais aussi heureux ni aussi malheureux qu'on se l'imagine. 20. Il ne dit mot, mais il n'en pense pas moins. 21. Les pluies qu'il fait depuis trois jours me mettent au désespoir. 22. Il y a tant de peine et de misère dans ce monde qu'il faut non seulement se repentir du mal que l'on a causé, mais aussi du bien qu'on n'a pas fait. 23. Je n'empêche pas qu'il (ne) fasse ce qu'il voudra. 24. Les portes des palais sont moins hautes qu'on ne pense: on n'y passe qu'en se baissant. 25. Si tu as bien vécu, tu as beaucoup vécu. 26. La vie s'achève que l'on a à peine ébauché son ouvrage. 27. La nature nous a donné deux oreilles et une seule langue, pour nous apprendre que nous devons peu parler mais beaucoup écouter. 28. Rappelez-vous qu'il ne faut pas négliger les bagatelles pour atteindre à la perfection, et que la perfection n'est point une bagatelle.

EXERCISE 68.

1. Lord Chesterfield one day visited Lord Strafford, one of his most intimate friends. 2. His host had a little dog that he was very fond of and which followed him everywhere. 3. As the two friends were taking a walk together the dog suddenly bit Lord Chesterfield on (à) the leg. 4. "Fear nothing," said Lord Strafford, calmly, who saw his friend turn-round quickly, "My dog never bites." Immediately Lord Chesterfield made the dog howl well with (de) a blow from his cane, as he answered (in answering) quite as calmly, "Fear nothing, my lord (milord), I never strike little dogs." 6. One day Count de Grancé was seriously wounded in (à) the knee by a ball. 7. Surgeons were at once sent-for, who immediately did their best to (leur possible pour) find the ball, but in vain. 8. However, they made the count suffer horribly. 9. At last, unable to stand the pain any longer, he asked them why they were torturing him thus. 10. "We are only searching-for (do but search, ne faire que chercher) the ball," they answered. 11. "Goodness!" replied the count, "Why (264, e) didn't you tell me that before? I have it in my pocket." 12. There was once-upon-a-time (formerly) a fisherman fishing tranquilly in a little brook. 13. He was not catching much, which does not prevent a fisherman, however, from being quite happy, and there was no doubt that he was. 14. At last he caught a fish, a very little one, not larger than your finger. 15. The poor little thing, thoroughly frightened, could scarcely speak at first. 16. At last it succeeded in begging the fisherman to throw it back (rejeter) into the water. 16. "What will you do with (211) me, I am not yet big enough," it said. 7. "Give me time to become so (155), and then, another day, you will fish me out again (repêcher). Then I will make you a good dish (plat); at present I can afford (make) you but a very little mouthful. The little fish will grow big," it said pitifully, "provided (205) God lends him life." 20. "Not at all," said the fisherman, "for a long time I haven't caught a fish. 21. I have not seen one for two hours. 22. No, now I have (hold) you, and I am not sure of catching you again. 23. It cannot be helped. 24. One must not quit the

cert
frie

(A

T
befo
if it
ing
sigh
heav
wall
look
welc
to m
heav
ange
the
to ri
joyf
comp
expr

lent
venir
dire,
nellen

275
1. T
person
Venez
Come
Nor
Mexic
2. R
Ce liv
Une d
Tout a
3. P
Il dem
He liv
Nous
We sta
4. W
a. Hal
Clo
Sal
Dis

certain for the uncertain. 25. You will go into the frying-pan and be fried this very (*des ce*) evening."

COMPOSITION 69.

Drawing Near the Heavenly City.

(A free rendering of this exercise into French will be found best.)

This done, they compassed¹ them round¹ on every side. Some went before, some behind; and some on the right hand, some on the left (as if it were to guard them through the upper regions) continually sounding their trumpets most melodiously, as they went on; so that the very sight to the eyes of those who could behold it was not other than if heaven itself was come-down² to meet them. Thus, therefore, they walked, ever and anon (at times) these trumpeters would, with their looks and gestures, still (ever) signify to Christian and his brother how welcome³ they were into their company and how gladly they had come to meet them⁴. And now were these two men, as it were⁵ in [the] heaven before they came to it, being overpowered by the sight of the angels and with hearing of their melodious notes. Here also they had the city itself in view and they thought they heard all the bells therein to ring to welcome⁶ them there. But above-all⁷ the warm (ardent) and joyful thoughts that they had of their dwelling there with such company, and that for ever-and-ever⁸! Oh! how can tongue or pen express their glorious joy! And thus they came up to the gate.

BUNYAN.

l'entourer. 2. descendre. 3. être le bienvenu, be welcome. 4. to come (go) to meet them, venir (aller) à leur rencontre; or venir (aller) au devant de may be used. 5. pour ainsi dire. 6. souhaiter la bienvenue à, faire bon accueil à. 7. surtout. 8. pour toujours; éternellement.

VII. THE PREPOSITION (DE LA PRÉPOSITION).

THE PRINCIPAL PREPOSITIONS (LES PRINCIPALES PRÉPOSITIONS).

275. *A serves to mark.*

1. Tendency: (a) After adjectives (88); (b) after verbs (241); (c) before names of persons, places, etc.

Venez à moi.

Aller à Paris.

Aller au collège.

Au marché.

Come to me.

To go to Paris.

To go to college.

To market.

NOTE.—Also with masculine or plural names of countries: Il va au Canada, au Mexique, aux Indes. So also for place: Il est au Canada, etc.

2. Possession.

Ce livre est à moi (à toi, etc.).

Une chien à moi (à toi, etc.).

Tout à vous.

This book is mine (thine, etc.).

A dog of my own (of thy own, etc.).

Yours truly.

3. Place where, Time when:

Il demeure à la campagne.

He lives in the country.

Nous restons à la maison.

We stay at home.

Jusqu' à quatre heures.

Till four o'clock.

Il demeure à Toronto (à Londres, etc.).

He lives in Toronto (in London, etc.).

4. With attributes, to signify (a) the purpose, (b) the distinguishing attribute.

a. Halle aux draps.

Verre à vin.

Cloth market.

Wine glass.

Salle à diner.

Chambre à coucher.

Dining-room.

Bed-room.

b. Moulin à scie.

Chaise à bras.

Saw-mill.

Arm-chair.

L'homme à l'habit noir.

The man with the black coat.

5. With verbs of selling, engaging, etc., to signify (a) the manner, (b) the price.

a. Les œufs se vendent à la douzaine.
Eggs are sold by the dozen.

Nous prendrons la chambre à la semaine.
We shall take the room by the week.

b. À un franc la douzaine.
At one franc a dozen.

Un dîner à trois francs.
A three franc dinner.

6. Instrument.

Écrire au crayon, à la plume.
Write in pencil, in ink.

Pêcher à la ligne.
Fish with hook and line.

7. In many phrases, to shew an adverbial relation.

Aller à pied, à cheval.
Go on foot, on horseback.

Peu à peu.
Little by little.

Deux à deux.
Two by two.

À la fois.
At the same time.

Se battre au pistolet.
Fight with pistols.

Aller à droite, à gauche.
Go to the right, to the left.

8. In exclamations such as : Au feu ! à l'assassin ! au secours ! *Fire ! murder ! help !*

9. Separation, deprivation, after certain verbs. See 210.

276. **De.** 1. *De* is used as the sign of partitive nouns (49) ; with the complement of adjectives (89) ; and of verbs (212) ; as the preposition after passive verbs (182).

2. It serves to mark Possession, Origin, Point of Departure, Separation :

De qui êtes-vous fils ?
Whose son are you ?
Le fils de l'ami de
votre père.
Your father's friend's
son.

Coup de poing.
Blow.
Des vins de France.
French wines.

Partir d'Europe.
Depart from Eu-
rope.
Absence de l'école.
Absence from school.

D'aujourd'hui en huit.
This day week.
De dimanche en quinze.
Sunday fortnight.

3. Serves to mark Identity :

La ville de Paris.
The city of Paris.

Le mois de mai.
The month of May.

Un coquin d'enfant.
A rogue of a child.

Gueuse de fièvre !
Rascally fever !

4. Serves to mark Substance, Profession, Quality.

Maison de brique(s).
Brick house.

Homme de parole.
Man of his word.

Air d'homme.
Manly look.

Homme de guerre.
Warrior.

Fleurs de printemps.
Spring flowers.

Maison de campagne.
Country-house.

5. Is used in many adverbial phrases.

De jour en jour.
From day to day.

De jour et de nuit.
By day and by night.

Parler d'un ton menaçant.
Speak in a threatening tone.

Canadien de naissance.
Canadian by birth.

Je l'en connais de nom.
I know him by name.

De ce côté-ci, de ce côté-là.
On this side, on that side.

6. Is used to join an adjective or participle (a) to the indefinite pronouns (*quelqu'un, quelque chose, rien, aucun, personne*) or to *ce qui, que, quoi, ceci, cela* ; (b) to a noun preceded by a numeral or a quantitative adverb, or to *en*, in such sentences as :

a. Je n'ai rien de bon.
I have nothing good.
Ce que j'ai de bon.
What I have good.
Quoi de plus beau que cela !
What [could be] finer than that !
Personne de capable.
No one capable.

b. Il y eut cent hommes (de) tués.
There were a hundred men killed.
Parmi vos pommes il y en a de gâtées.
Among your apples there are some spoiled.
Combien y en eut-il de tués ?
How many were there killed.

277. **Dans, En.**—*Dans* is less vague and indeterminate than *en*.

Dans, with a Determinate Sense.

En, with an Indeterminate Sense.

1. Place : Dans le tiroir, dans le verger.
In the drawer, in the garden.
Dans l'Amérique du Sud.
In South America.

a. State, Position :

En voyage. *En campagne.*
On a journey. *On a campaign.*
En paix. *En Amérique.*
In peace. *In America.*

2.—State, in such phrases as :

Être dans la disgrâce, dans le doute
To be in disgrace, in doubt.

En Afrique
In Africa?

3. Mo

En
en Tho

4. In,
Dan
In t

At the
Je se
Isha

En
the ge

Agir en
To act

Aller e
Go in d

278.
and pl

Avant
Je vais

280.
and pl

Après
Après

NOTE

NOTE

282.
Entre 7

L'un d'
Entre n

284.
Vers le
Toward

286.
a. J'éto
Eco

287.
Chez so

288. S
A
O

O

U
B

E

NOTE

of the v

291. I
O

3. Motion into : Entrer dans la maison. | b. Motion to (of countries): Aller en Europe
En is used before *le* and *la* in a few phrases : *en l'air, en (la) présence, en l'absence, en l'honneur, en (l'an) 1890.*

4. *In*, of definite periods of time :
 Dans cet hiver.
In that winter.

c. *In*, of indefinite periods :
 En hiver, en été, en automne. (*Au printemps.*)
In winter, in summer, in autumn. (In spring.)

At the expiration of :
 Je serai là dans dix minutes.
I shall be there in ten minutes.

In the space of :
 Je puis le faire en dix minutes.
I can do it in ten minutes.

En is used likewise before nouns with the sense of *like, as* ; before pronouns ; before the gerund (251) ; in many adverbial expressions.

Agir en homme. Parle en roi. Il est en moi de la faire. Mon espoir est en vous.
To act like a man. To speak like a king. I am able to do it. My hope is in you.

Aller en foule. En haut, en bas. Fondre en larmes. En avant, en arrière.
Go in crowds. Upstairs, downstairs. Burst into tears. Forward, backward.

278. **Avant** denotes priority of time and place :

Avant dix heures. *Before ten o'clock.*
 Je vais avant vous. *I go (in time or by right of precedence) before you.*

Devant la maison, devant vous.
Before the house, in front of you.

280. **Après** denotes sequence of time and place. With infinitives (246).

Après votre départ. *After your departure.*
 Après vous. *After (in time or precedence) you.*

281. **Derrière** denotes in the rear of.

Un petit jardin derrière la maison.
A little garden behind the house.

NOTE 1.—**Avant** is the opposite of **après**. **Devant** is the opposite of **derrière**.

NOTE 2.—**D'après**=*in conformity with* : peindre d'après nature.

282. **Entre**=*between, among*.

Entre Toronto et Montreal.
 L'un d'entre eux. *One of them.*
 Entre nous. *Between ourselves.*

283. **Parmi**=*amidst, among*.

Parmi la foule. *In the midst of the crowd.*
 Parmi les arbres. *Among the trees.*

284. **Vers**, towards (of time and place)

Vers le sud. Vers midi.
 Towards the north. About noon.

285. **Envers**, towards (with feeling).

Compassant envers les pauvres.
Compassionate to the poor.

286. **Avec**.—(a) *In company with* ; (b) *by means of* :

a. J'étais avec lui. *I was with him.*
 Écouter (listen) avec intérêt.

b. J'écris avec une plume d'or.
I write with a gold pen.

287. **Chez**.—(a) *At the house (shop) of* :
 Chez son père. Je viens de chez elle.

(b) *among (a people), in (an author)* :
 Chez les Romains, chez La Fontaine.

288. **Sur**, (*resting*) on : Sur la table.

About : Je n'ai pas d'argent sur moi.
 Over : L'aigle plane (*hovers*) sur la montagne.

On : La maison donne sur (*overlooks*) la rue.

Upon : Malheur sur malheur !

By : Dix mètres de longueur sur dix de largeur.

Être sur le retour=*past middle age*.

289. **Sous**, under :

Être sous clef, sous la table.
 Sous le prétexte de.

290. **Contre**=*against* : Trois contre un.

Contre (*contrary to*) mon avis.
 Parier (*bet*) mille contre (*to*) un.
 Se fâcher (*grow angry*) contre (*at*) lui.

NOTE.—**Dessus** and **dessous** are used in place of *sur* and *sous* when the meanings of the words are contrasted : *Il n'est ni dessus ni dessous la table.*

291. **De dessus**, from above :

Ôtez le tableau de dessus la fenêtre.

292. **De dessous**, from below.

De dessous terre. *From under ground.*

293. **Par-dessus, over :**
Il porte un manteau par-dessus son habit.

295. **Par, through :** Par la fenêtre.
Vid : Voyager par Londres.
From : Par dépit (*spite*), par amour, par pitié.
Under : Par un soleil brûlant.
On : Par un beau jour.
By : Prendre par la main.
A (per) : Tant par personne, par leçon, par jour.
Par où allez-vous ? Par ici ou par là ?
Which way do you go ? This way or that ?
By : Page par page. With infinitives (243).

298. **Depuis, since :** Depuis mon départ.
Depuis Paris jusqu'à Lyon. *From Paris to Lyons.*
With past time : Il est ici depuis une heure. *He has been here for an hour.*

299. **Voici, here is (are). Voilà, there is (are) :**
Voici ma pipe, voilà mon cigare. Me voici. Le monsieur que voilà.
Voilà ce que vous avez dit : voici ce qu'il vous faut faire.
That is what you have said ; this is what you must do.

NOTE.—The verb force (*vois=see*) is still strong enough to affect the position of the personal pronouns, which must precede these prepositions : *Le voilà, There he is.*

300. **Pendant (durant), during ; hors (hormis), except ; malgré, in spite of ; moyennant, by means of ; nonobstant, notwithstanding ; outre, besides ; sans, without ; sauf, save ; selon, according to.**

301. The following prepositions are followed by *de* :

auprès de, } <i>near.</i>	à raison de, <i>by reason of ;</i>	au dehors de, <i>without.</i>
près(proche)de, }	à la rate of,	au-devant de, <i>before.</i>
autour de, <i>around.</i>	au rez de, <i>on a level with.</i>	(aller au-devant de, <i>to go to</i>
à cause de, <i>on account of.</i>	en deça de, <i>this side of.</i>	meet.)
faute de, <i>for want of.</i>	au delà de, <i>that side of.</i>	au travers de, <i>through.</i>
hors de, <i>out of.</i>	au-dessous de, <i>under.</i>	le long de, <i>along.</i>
à fleur de, <i>even with.</i>	au-dessus de, <i>above.</i>	vis à vis (de), <i>opposite.</i>
à force de, <i>by dint of.</i>	au dedans de, <i>within.</i>	

Notice also :

Par rapport à lui.
With regard to him.

Quant à lui.
As to him.

Jusqu'à quatre heures.
Till four o'clock.

REPETITION OF THE PREPOSITIONS.

302. The prepositions *à, de, en* must be repeated before every complement. Other prepositions may remain understood, especially if the complements are synonymous. Should the complements be of opposed natures, it is always better to repeat the preposition.

NOTE 1.—The omission of *de* and the Article takes place in a few phrases, which may be regarded as compounds.

Le système des poids et mesures. L'école des ponts et chaussées.

NOTE 2.—*Sans* is not repeated when followed by *ni*, but is repeated after *et*.

Sans or *ni* argent.

Sans peur et *sans* reproche.

VIII. THE CONJUNCTION (DE LA CONJONCTION).

303. The characteristics of the various conjunctions have already been remarked on. (See 234, 235, 236.)

304. *Et* and *mais* have a coordinate use in French, with complements of different construction, while *and* and *but* in English may connect only similar constructions.

C'était un jeune homme très habile et que toute le monde aimait.

He was a young man who was very clever and whom everybody loved.

IX. THE INTERJECTION (DE L'INTERJECTION).

305. The interjections most frequently used in French are :

ah !	ah !	fi (doute) !	fi !	ho !	holloa !	oh !	oh !
bon !	well !	hein !	hey !	bah !	nonsense !	gare !	look out !
chut !	hush !	hélas !	alas !	parbleu !	zounds !	zest !	psaw !

306. Other parts of speech are frequently used as interjections.

allons !	come !	mon Dieu !	goodness !	silence !	silence !
eh bien !	well !	par exemple !	indeed !	tiens (tenez) !	here !
à la bonne heure !	very well !	peste !	plague take it !	tout beau !	gently !

COMPOSITION 70.

The Prayer of Nature.

Nature is now at her evening prayers ; she is kneeling¹ before those red hills. I see her prostrate² on the great steps of her altar, praying God for³ a fair night for mariners at sea, for travellers in deserts, for lambs on moors, and unfledged (without feathers) birds in woods. I see her now,—her robe of blue air spreads⁴ to the outskirts of the heather where yonder flock is grazing ; a veil, white as an avalanche, descends from her head to her feet. Under her breast I see her zone, purple like the horizon ; through its blush shines the star of evening. Her steady eyes I cannot⁵ picture,—they are deep as lakes ; they are lifted and full of worship⁷ ; they tremble with the softness of love. Her forehead has the expanse of a cloud and is paler than the moon risen long before dark gathers. She rests her bosom on the ridge of moor ; her mighty hands are joined beneath it. So kneeling, face to face, she speaks with God.

CHARLOTTE BRONTË.

¹s'agenouiller. ²prosterné. ³prier de. ⁴s'étendre. ⁵ceinture f. ⁶161, Note. ⁷adoration.

COMPOSITION 71.

The Cloud.

"On a burning summer morning a little cloud issued from the depths of the sea, hovering¹ lightly, like a child who gives himself up² to joyous frolics,³ across the blue sky and above the thirsty earth exhausted by a long drought. While traversing space, the little cloud perceived beneath it the poor laborers, working in the sweat of their brow, while softly carried on⁴ by the breeze, it was making-its-way⁵ without difficulty. "Oh !" it said to itself, "if I could do something to relieve the miseries of those poor people who are down-there upon that ungrateful earth !"

The day was slipping away, and the cloud kept increasing, ever increasing ; and as it got larger the desire it had formed of being useful

to suffering humanity also increased. The heat became more intense on the earth; the sunbeams burned like a hot fire, till the laborers were near fainting^a; and yet, with (by) a last effort, they kept working (worked still), for they were very poor. From time to time they cast an entreating look upon the cloud, as [if] to say to it: "Alas! how miserable we are! Help us."

"I will help you," said the cloud, and it began to descend softly. Suddenly it remembered having heard it said, when it was still a child in the depths of the ocean, that if a cloud ventured too near the earth, death became its lot. Undecided, it wandered to and fro,⁷ carried by the course of its thoughts; but at last it stopped, saying: "O tired men, I will help you!"

Stimulated by this thought, the cloud took gigantic proportions. Like an angel, it hovered above the earth, unfolding its broad wings over the thirsty fields. It became so imposing that men and animals were filled with fear in its presence.

"I will relieve you; I will die for you!" exclaimed the cloud and the echo of its words was heard from one extremity of the horizon to the other. The thunder resounded⁹ through the sky, the rain fell abundantly upon the earth.

But the cloud was gone for ever."

¹planer. ²se livrer. ³ébat. ⁴entraîner. ⁵cheminer. ⁶s'évanouir. ⁷ça et là. ⁸emporter. ⁹retentir.

COMPOSITION 72.

The Dying Gladiator.

I see before me the gladiator lie:
He leans upon his hand—his manly brow
Consents to death, but conquers agony,
And his droop'd head sinks gradually low—
And through his side the last drops, ebbing slow
From the red gash, fall heavy, one by one,
Like the first of a thunder-shower; and now
The arena swims around him: he is gone,
Ere ceased the inhuman shout which hail'd the wretch who won.

He heard it, but he heeded not—his eyes
Were with his heart, and that was far away;
He reck'd not of the life he lost nor prize,
But where his rude hut by the Danube lay,
There were his young barbarians all at play,
There was their Dacian mother—he, their sire,
Butchered to make a Roman holiday—
All this rushed with his blood—Shall he expire,
And unavenged?—Arise! ye Goths, and glut your ire.

BYRON.

se on
were
-king
cast
how

oftly.
child
earth,
rried
tired

sions.
wings
imals

and
on to
fell

em.

n.

N.

